About the author:

初めまして! My name is Jeremy Rasmussen, and I am just 'some guy;' born and raised in America. As a child, I always had a fascination with the Japanese language, and about four years ago I decided to do something about that fascination by coming to Japan to study it.

I came as an English teacher, but with the sole purpose of learning Japanese. I decided to write this book because it seems that nowadays, many people have the same fascination for Japan as I had, and as someone who started out as a complete beginner with the language, I felt I could easily teach and demonstrate just how simple and fun learning Japanese can be. I am not a professor, nor am I any kind of authority on the subject. I am just some guy who had the same dream as you, and wants to help you accomplish your goals.

Next, I'd like to answer some questions regarding this book and its intended readers.



Who is this book for?

This book was written for beginners up to low-level students of the language.

What can I learn from this book?

This book will teach you, what I believe to be are, the basics of the language, and will give you the ability to express yourself easily, while also building a solid foundation upon which to continue your study. This book's focus will be on grammar, giving you the tools needed to grasp the essence of the language and use it freely.

What will I be able to do by the end of this book?

By the time you finish this book, you will be able to read and write Hiragana and Katana, and recognize many different Kanji. You will be able to talk about your likes, dislikes, future plans, past events, etc... You will be able to enjoy daily conversations and much more!

How do I use this book?

Read through each chapter carefully and try your best to answer the practice problems before consulting the answer key (found at the back of the book).

When you see a star ('*') at the end of a sentence, you will find a corresponding "Some guy's pro tip" that will give you some extra, useful information somewhere below that sentence.

It will also be necessary to re-read chapters. Absorbing all of the information presented in each chapter after one read-through is, for all intents and purposes, impossible. If you read a chapter that you find is difficult to understand, come back to it a day or two later and read it over again. During my study as a beginner, I often found that when I encountered something I believed to be too difficult, it became quite clear after I took a few days (or even weeks!) to read over the material again and let the information sink in. And while this book can certainly be useful for someone who wants to study completely on their own, I highly recommend finding a tutor to help facilitate the learning process.

Update! Launching YouTube channel

You can now follow along with each chapter of this textbook in a brand new YouTube channel I am launching at the beginning of June (2016).

The Channel is called "Learn Japanese From Some Guy" and can be found here: https://www.youtube.com/c/learnjapanesefromsomeguy

Now, you'll be able to get more detailed information, along with audio, to help improve your Japanese even more quickly.

Drop by and say hi. Leave a comment and tell me what you think of my videos. I am sure they will be helpful.

Table of Contents

Chapter 1: The Kana
Chapter 2: My first Japanese sentence!
<u>Chapter 3: Likes and dislikes with 「好き」 and 「好き では ありません」</u>
Chapter 4: Asking questions with 「か」 Chapter 5: Ko-so-a-do
Chapter 6: Showing possession with $\lceil \mathcal{O} \rfloor$
Chapter 7: Describing direction and movement with \[\(\mathcal{U} \) \] and \[\(\sigma \) \]
Chapter 8: Describing locations with \(\mathcal{L}\)
Chapter 9: A note on verbs
Chapter 10: Conjugating verbs to the \$\pm t\$-form
Chapter 11: Making verbs negative with 「ません」
Chapter 12: Making verbs negative with 「ない」
Chapter 13: い and な-adjectives
Chapter 14: Using verbs with 「を」
Chapter 15: Talking about abilities with 「こと が できる」
Chapter 16: The potential form
Chapter 17: Cause and effect with 「から」
Chapter 18: Cause and effect with 「ので」
Chapter 19: The formal past tense with 「~ました」
Chapter 20: The informal past tense with $\lceil \sim t \rfloor$
Chapter 21: The formal negative past tense with 「~ません でした」
Chapter 22: Informal negative past tense with 「~なかった」
Chapter 23: Gaining the ability to do something with 「~よう に なる」
Chapter 24: Wh-questions
<u>Chapter 25: Talking about past experiences with 「~こと が ある」</u>
<u>Chapter 26: The volitional form</u>
Chapter 27: Giving and receiving with 「あげる,」「もらう」and「くれる」
Chapter 28: Giving advice and warnings with ほう がいい」
<u>Chapter 29: The 7-form</u>
Chapter 30: Giving commands and making requests with the 7-form
Chapter 31: Listing off actions with the 7-form
<u>Chapter 32: Expressing an ongoing action with 「~ている」</u>
<u>Chapter 33: The past-progressive with 「~ていました」</u>
Chapter 34: Doing something for others with $\lceil \sim \tau \delta i \delta \rfloor$ $\lceil \sim \tau \delta \delta j \rfloor$ and $\lceil \sim \tau \delta \delta \delta \rfloor$
Chapter 35: Describing desires with $\lceil \sim t \leq v \rfloor$
<u>Chapter 36: Describing methods with 「∼方」</u>
Chapter 37: Describing our thoughts and feelings with 「と 思う」
Chapter 38: The conditional form with $\lceil \sim t \nmid b \rfloor$
<u>Chapter 39: The Conditional form with 「~は」</u>
Chapter 40: Talking about plans with 「~つもり」
Chanter 41: Asking for permission with $\lceil \sim 7 \nmid 1 \mid 1$

```
Chapter 42: 'Until' and 'by'
```

Chapter 43: Telling others what you'll be doing with 「と 思う」

Chapter 44: 'But' with 「が」 and 「けど」

Chapter 45: Describing excess with 「~すぎる」

Chapter 46: Describing locations with 「上,」「下,」「左」and 「右」

Chapter 47: Comparing with things 「より、」「ほど」and「の 方 が」

Chapter 48: Trying things with 「~てみる」

Chapter 49: Describing how things look/sound/seem with $\lceil \sim \xi \ \rangle$

Chapter 50: 'While ~' with 「~ながら」

Chapter 51: 'Easy to ~' and 'Difficult to ~' with 「やすい」 and 「にくい」

Chapter 52: 'Don't know whether ~ or ~' with 「~かどうか」

Chapter 53: Starting, continuing, or ending an action

Chapter 55: Wh-questions + 「でも」

Chapter 56: 'Must not ~' with 「~て は いけない」

Chapter 58: The passive form with [\$\lambda \delta \] and [\$\lambda \delta \delta \]

Closing and acknowledgments

Chapter 1: The Kana

Most students of Japanese are often frightened by the idea of having to learn how to read Hiragana and Katakana (collectively known as 'Kana'), but let me assure you that learning to read (and write!) in Japanese is very simple (and of course, fun!). Let's start with a short introduction of the Kana.

Katakana:

Katakana is most often used to write 'loan words' (words adopted from other countries). You will see many examples of these loan words as you continue through this book, but some popular examples include coffee ($\neg \vdash \vdash \neg$), toilet ($\vdash \vdash \vdash \lor \vdash$), and computer ($\neg \lor \vdash \vdash \vdash \neg \circlearrowleft \vdash \neg$). If you read these words in Katakana, you will notice how they sound similar to the original word.

Below are charts containing the Katakana characters and how to pronounce them.

			Ka	ata	ka	na				
	P	а	イ	i	ウ	u	工	е	オ	0
k	力	ka	+	ki	ク	ku	ケ	ke	コ	ko
S	サ	sa	シ	shi	ス	su	セ	se	ソ	so
t	タ	ta	チ	chi	ツ	tsu	テ	te	 	to
n	ナ	na	=	ni	ヌ	nu	ネ	ne	1	no
h	/\	ha	ヒ	hi	フ	fu	^	he	ホ	ho
m	マ	ma	33	mi	4	mu	メ	me	モ	mo
У	ヤ	ya			ユ	yu			3	yo
r	ラ	ra	リ	ri	ル	ru	レ	re	口	ro
W	ワ	wa							ヲ	WO
	ン	n								

Please note that the $\lceil 7 \rfloor$ character is written in Romaji as 'fu' and not 'hu.' It is more common to see it written this way, as it more closely matches the pronunciation of the character.

ガ	ga	ギ	gi	グ	gu	ゲ	ge	ゴ	go
ザ	za	ジ	ji	ズ	zu	ゼ	ze	ゾ	ZO
ダ	da	ヂ	ji	ヅ	dzu	デ	de	ド	do
バ	ba	ビ	bi	ブ	bu	ベ	be	ボ	bo
	-0 0-			-				1	

キャ	kya	キュ	kyu	牛ョ	kyo
シャ	sha	シュ	shu	ショ	sho
チャ	cha	チュ	chu	チョ	cho
ニャ	nya	ニュ	nyu	二ョ	nyo
ヒャ	hya	ヒュ	hyu	ヒョ	hyo
ミヤ	mya	ミュ	myu	EЭ	myo

リャ	rya	リュ	ryu	リョ	ryo
ギャ	gya	ギュ	gyu	ギョ	gyo
ジャ	ja	ジュ	ju	ジョ	jo
ビャ	bya	ビュ	byu	ビョ	byo
ピャ	руа	ピュ	pyu	ピョ	руо

Hiragana:

Unlike Katakana, Hiragana is used to write native Japanese words (remember, Katakana is typically reserved for loan words). However, it can also be used in place of Kanji if one doesn't know how to write a particular Kanji character.

た

For example, the verb for 'to eat' (taberu) can be written using Kanji as $\lceil \cancel{\text{c}} \land \cancel{\text{c}}, \rfloor$ or it can be written using only Hiragana as $\lceil \cancel{\text{c}} \land \cancel{\text{c}}. \rfloor$ Though they look quite different, both are read the exact same way and carry the exact same meaning. So, if you're thinking that you don't even need to learn Kanji, you're absolutely right! However, knowing and studying Kanji will not only give you a fuller, richer experience, it will also, believe it or not, make learning the language infinitely easier. So, instead of fearing Kanji, let's embrace it!

Below are some charts of the Hiragana characters we can use for reference:

			Hi	rag	ga	na				
	あ	а	<i>(</i>)	i	う	u	え	е	お	0
k	か	ka	き	ki	<	ku	け	ke	2	ko
S	5	sa	L	shi	す	su	せ	se	そ	so
t	た	ta	ち	chi	つ	tsu	7	te	٤	to
n	な	na	に	ni	ぬ	nu	ね	ne	の	no
h	は	ha	V	hi	٤,	fu	^	he	ほ	ho
m	ま	ma	み	mi	む	mu	め	me	ŧ	mo
У	や	ya			ゆ	yu			よ	yo
r	6	ra	り	ri	る	ru	れ	re	ろ	ro
W	わ	wa							を	wo
	h	n								

が	ga	ぎ	gi	ぐ	gu	げ	ge	ご	go
ざ	za	じ	ji	ず	zu	ぜ	ze	ぞ	ZO
だ	da	ぢ	ji	ブ	dzu	で	de	ど	do
ば	ba	び	bi	3.	bu	ベ	be	ぼ	bo
ぱ	ра	ぴ	pi	٤; ا	pu	~	pe	ぽ	ро

きゃ	kya	きゅ	kyu	きょ	kyo
しゃ	sha	しゅ	shu	しょ	sho
ちゃ	cha	ちゅ	chu	ちょ	cho
にゃ	nya	にゅ	nyu	にょ	nyo
ひゃ	hya	ひゅ	hyu	ひょ	hyo
みゃ	mya	みゅ	myu	みょ	myo

りゃ	rya	りゅ	ryu	りょ	ryo
ぎゃ	gya	ぎゅ	gyu	ぎょ	gyo
じゃ	ja	じゅ	ju	じょ	jo
びゃ	bya	びゅ	byu	びょ	byo
ぴゃ	pya	ぴゅ	pyu	ぴょ	руо

Pronunciation:

 $\lceil \mathcal{I} \rceil$ and $\lceil \mathcal{I} : \rfloor$

As you go through this book, you will encounter a small $\lceil \supset \rfloor$ that looks like this; $\lceil \supset . \rfloor$ We do not read this character as 'tsu,' like we would the big $\lceil \supset . \rfloor$ Instead, this signals that we need to pause for a beat before reading the following character. This same rule also applies to the Katakana character $\lceil \lor \lor , \rfloor$ which uses $\lceil \lor \lor \rfloor$ to signal the same pause.

When written in Romaji (alphabetically), double consonants are used to represent this pause:

kk	びっくり	bi <u>kk</u> uri	Surprised
SS	キッス	<u>kissu</u>	Kiss
tt	なっとう	na <u>tt</u> ou	Fermented soybeans
pp	にっぽん	ni <u>pp</u> on	Japan

Pronunciation of [&:]

Although the character $\lceil \not \varepsilon \rfloor$ is written in Romaji as 'wo,' it is not pronounced to sound like 'whoa.' It sounds more simply like 'oh,' with only the *slightest* inkling of a 'w' sound at the beginning.

Pronunciation of [lt:]

 $\lceil l \sharp \rfloor$ is a little tricky because it can be pronounced two different ways. When $\lceil l \sharp \rfloor$ is used as a particle, and not as part of a word, it is pronounced as 'wa,' like in 'water.' For example, in the sentence:

これ <u>は</u> にほんご です。 Kore <u>ha</u> nihongo desu. This is Japanese. Even though we write $\lceil l \sharp \rfloor$ as 'ha' in Romaji, it is pronounced with a 'w' sound, not an 'h' sound. In the following sentence, however:

The first $\lceil l \sharp \rfloor$ is being used as a particle, and is pronounced as 'wa.' The $\lceil l \sharp \rfloor$ in $\lceil l \sharp \rfloor$, however, is pronounced with an 'h' sound because, in this case, it is being used as part of a word, and not as a particle.

Kanji:

As someone who has an interest in Japanese, it is likely that you have already had some kind of exposure to Kanji (there's some written on the cover of this book!), but you may not know much about it. Adopted from the Chinese language, most Japanese words can be expressed in part or completely in Kanji. Historically, there are said to be over 50,000 Kanji characters, but don't fret! Knowing only a small fraction of that will arm you with more than enough knowledge to understand a subway map, read a menu, or even read the newspaper!

By the end of elementary school, Japanese children are required to have learned 1,006 Kanji characters. And the Japanese Ministry of Education has created a list known as the Jouyou Kanji which consists of 2,136 characters and includes all of the Kanji characters one should ever need to function in Japanese society.

The Grammar structure:

As you may or may not already know, the structure of Japanese sentences is quite different from that of English. In English, we have a [subject + verb + object] structure, e.g., 'I study Japanese.' Japanese, however, has a [subject + object + verb] structure.

The previous example sentence written using a Japanese sentence structure would look like this; 'I Japanese study.'

It may seem a bit daunting having to learn a whole new way of thinking about how to put together a sentence, but trust me, once you delve into the language, it will become a natural, automatic process.

Recommendations:

As every sentence in this book will be written in both Hiragana and Katakana, you are strongly encouraged to study the above charts and learn how to read all of the characters without needing the Romaji. It won't be necessary to study Kanji explicitly, however, as the Hiragana to read each character (known as 'Furigana') will be written directly above the Kanji characters.

A simple way to learn Hiragana and Katakana is to make index cards with a Katakana or Hiragana character on one side and the pronunciation on the other. Flashcards make great tools because they are small and can easily be carried with you anywhere you go. If you find yourself with a few minutes to

spare as you're waiting at the dentist's office or in line at the grocery store, you can pull out your cards and do a quick practice. You can even ask your friends to quiz you! Doing this, I learned to recognize all of the Kana in only a few days.

And as you go through this book, you will work through numerous practice problems. I encourage you to write out *all* answers in Japanese. I don't expect you to write out all Kanji, however, but I encourage you to at least write everything in Hiragana or Katakana. And if you *do* want to challenge yourself and write out the Kanji, you can use this website (http://kakijun.jp/) to look up how to correctly write the each character. Just enter the desired Kanji character into the search box in the upper left and hit 'enter.'

Chapter 2: My first Japanese sentence!

In this chapter, we're going to focus on using the copula 「です」 and subject marking particles 「は」 and 「が」

First, let's check out [です.]

Trying to define what 「です」 means is somewhat tricky. At the beginning of the chapter, I labeled it as a 'copula,' which is a grammatical term for a word that acts as a 'linking verb,' or something that connects the subject of the sentence with the complement. But I don't want to waste time trying to define what it means in English, because it's grammatical concept that is quite foreign to English and may be impossible to truly translate. Most people, though, like to think of it as being equivalent to 'to be' in English. While I wouldn't agree with that thought completely, it may help in understanding the sentence structure, initially. After familiarizing yourself with the Japanese language, I'll leave it up to you to determine what it means.

Anyway, if you have any experience listening to or reading Japanese, then there is no doubt that you have encountered the word 「です」 (typically pronounced to rhyme with the word 'mess') on numerous occasions. If not, don't worry. The focus of this chapter is to introduce this handy word, so you can see it in action.

We will also take a look at the negative form of $\lceil \vec{c} t, \rfloor$ which is $\lceil \vec{c} t, \rfloor$ with $\lceil t t \rfloor$ pronounced as 'wa.'

Let's look at some example sentences:

なまえ 私 の 名前 は ジェレミー です。 Watashi no namae ha jeremii desu. My name is Jeremy. わたし なまえ 私 _ の 名前 は ジェレミー では ありません。 2. Watashi no namae ha jeremii deha arimasen. My name isn't Jeremy. きょう さむ 今日は寒いです。 Kyou ha samui desu. It's cold today. わたし 私 は アニメ が 好き です! Watashi ha anime ga suki desu! I like anime!

 $\frac{bcl}{\lambda}$ 私 は アニメ が 好き では ありません!

Watashi ha anime ga suki deha arimasen!

I don't like anime!

わたし にほんじん

6. 私 は 日本人 では ありません。

Watashi ha nihonjin deha arimasen.

I am not Japanese.

7. 彼 の 車 は 赤 では ありません。

Kare no kuruma ha aka deha arimasen.

His car is not red.

The subject marking particles 「は」 and 「が:」

It is beyond the scope of this book to fully explain in detail the differences between these two particles, and when it is appropriate to use one over the other. In fact, it seems that Japanese people themselves are guilty of misusing one or the other on occasion! Just know that they are used to mark the subject of a sentence.

It is difficult to translate into English, but a typical interpretation of $\lceil l \sharp \rfloor$ is 'As for [subject]...' For example, in the sentence:

Watashi ha aisukuriimu ga suki desu.

I like ice cream.

わたし

Another example:

Kono e ha kirei desu.

This painting is beautiful.

This sentence could also be translated as, 'As for this painting, it is beautiful.'

And in this example, we can see the usage of both $\lceil l \sharp \rfloor$ and $\lceil t \sharp : \rfloor$

わたし にほんじん かれ にほんじん Ex. 私 は 日本人 では ありません。 彼 が 日本人 です。 Watashi ha nihonjin deha arimasen. Kare ga nihonjin desu. I am not Japanese. <i>He</i> is Japanese.
We can see 「は」 marking 「 私 」 as the subject of the first sentence, and 「が」 marking the subject of the second sentence. But why did we use 「が」 and not 「は」 here? The reason is, 「が」 can be thought of as the particle used to <i>emphasize</i> something about the subject it is marking.
Imagine that someone was accusing you of being the thief who robbed the bank. In your defense, you might say something like, 'I didn't rob the bank He did!' while pointing at the real thief. That's a situation in which you would use $\lceil t^{5}, \rfloor$ since you want to stress that it was <i>someone else</i> that robbed the bank, not <i>you</i> (at least, I hope you don't rob banks).
Now let's take a crack at our first set practice problems.
Practice problems:
Fill in the blanks with either 「は,」「が,」「です,」or「では ありません.」
かれ なまえ 1. 彼 の 名前ジャック。 Kare no namae jakku His name is Jack.
わたし じん かれ じん 2. 私 アメリカ 人 。 彼 アメリカ 人 。 Watashi amerikajin Kare amerikajin I'm not American. He is.
きょう さむ 3. 今日 寒い。 Kyou samui It's cold today.
えんぴつ 4. これ ペン。これ 鉛筆。 Kore pen Kore enpitsu This isn't a pen. This is a pencil.
ふじさん 5. 富士山きれい。 Fuji san kirei Mt. Fuji is beautiful.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- The subject of a sentence can be marked with either 「は」 or 「が」
- $\lceil b^{\zeta} \rfloor$ also marks the subject of a sentence, but is used to express emphasis
- 「です」 functions similarly to 'to be' in English, but is not 100% equivalent
- The negative form of \[\tilde{c} \] is \[\tilde{c} \] a b \[\tilde{z} \]

Chapter 3: Likes and dislikes with 「好き」 and 「好き では ありません」

In this chapter, we will explore how to talk about what we like and what we don't like. Using what little we have learned so far, we can actually build quite complex sentences. As you practice these sentences, please pay attention to the use of $\lceil \mathfrak{T}, \rfloor \lceil \mathfrak{t}, \rfloor$ and $\lceil \mathfrak{b}, \rfloor$

The structure of our sentences will look like this:

First, let's look at how to talk about what we like.

Note how $\lceil l \sharp \rfloor$ marks the subject of the sentence, and $\lceil \sharp \sharp \rfloor$ is used to mark what the subject likes.

Now, let's look at how to talk about what we *don't* like.

<u>かのじょ</u> ねこ す

3. <u>彼女 は 猫 が 好き では ありません</u>。

Kanojo ha neko ga suki deha arimasen.

She doesn't like cats

I feel it is worth mentioning now that $\lceil b \mid b \nmid b \mid c$ an be expressed more casually as $\lceil b \mid b \mid c$. All of the sentences we have seen so far with $\lceil b \mid b \mid b \mid c$ ould have $\lceil b \mid b \mid b \mid c$ replaced with $\lceil b \mid c \mid c$, and the meaning would be the exact same. The only thing that *would* change is the level of politeness.

Using 「ない,」 example sentence 1 from above would be written like this:

す

私 は すし が 好き では ない。

Watashi ha sushi ga suki deha nai.

I don't like sushi.

Now let's check out some practice problems.

We're going to answer the following questions using our own thoughts and feelings. Let's look at an example first:

す

Ex: あなた は りんご が 好き です か?

Anata ha ringo ga suki desu ka?

Do you like apples?

はい、私 は りんご が 好きです

わたし

Personally, I love apples, so I answered the question with 「はい、 私 は りんご が 好き で わたし

す.」If I didn't like apples, however, I would have answered with 「いいえ、 私 は りんご が好き では ありません.」

When answering with 「好き です,」let's begin our answer with 「はい,」which means 'yes.' And when answering with 「好き では ありません,」let's begin our answer with 「いいえ,」which means 'no.'

Now try some on your own:

Practice problems:

なつす

1. あなた は 夏 が 好き です か?

Anata ha natsu ga suki desu ka?

	Do you like summer?
2.	うみ す あなた は 海 が 好き です か? Anata ha umi ga suki desu ka? Do you like the ocean?

- 3. あなた は ブロッコリー が 好き です か? Anata ha broccorii ga suki desu ka?
- はな す
 4. あなたは 花 が 好き です か?
 Anata ha hana ga suki desu ka?
 Do you like flowers?

Do you like broccoli?

す 5. あなた は ロマンスノベル が 好き です か? Anata ha romansu noberu ga suki desu ka? Do you like romance novels?

にほんご す 6. あなた は 日本語 が 好き です か? Anata ha nihongo ga suki desu ka? Do you like Japanese?

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We can express that we like something with $\lceil \sim$ が 好き です \rfloor
- We can express that we dislike something with $\lceil \sim$ が 好き では ありません \rfloor
- In casual situations, we can use 「好き で は ない」 to express that we don't like something

Chapter 4: Asking questions with 「か」

So far, we have done a pretty good job of making statements, but what do we do when we want to ask a question? Surely as we expand our Japanese knowledge, we'll want to ask many questions; to our friends, strangers, store clerks, etc... In Japanese, asking questions is quite easy. As we saw in the practice questions from the last chapter, we can simply add $\lceil b \rceil$ to the end of a statement, and it *magically* becomes a question!

Using some of our example sentences from the chapter 3, let's see how it works

As you can see, we just add $\lceil b \rceil$ to the end of our statement, and it turns into a question.

Of course, we aren't limited to only using $\lceil h \rceil$ to ask about likes and dislikes. We can use it to ask about anything.

Let's try a few practice problems now.

Practice problems:

Convert	the	fol	llowi	ng s	statements	into	auestions.
C C 11 , C 1 C		101	110 111	· .	June	11100	questions.

	Ex. 今日 は 金曜日 です。 Kyou ha kinyoubi desu. Today is Friday.	
	今日は金曜日ですか	? (Is today Friday?)
1.	あなた は サム です。 Anata ha samu desu. You are Sam.	
		? (Are you Sam?)
2.	ほん す あなた は 本 が 好き です。 Anata ha hon ga suki desu. You like books.	
	-	? (Do you like books?)
3.	つめ これ は 冷 たい です。 Kore ha tsumetai desu. This is cold.	
		? (Is this cold?)
4.	やさ やさ 彼 は 優 しい です。 Kare ha yasashii desu. He is nice.	
		? (Is he nice?)
5.	これ は りんご です。 Kore ha ringo desu. This is an apple.	
		? (Is this an apple?)

Chapter Summary:

In this chapter, we learned how to form and ask basic questions using $\lceil \mathfrak{D} \cdot . \rfloor$

Simply by appending $\lceil \mathfrak{D} \rceil$ to the end of a statement, it instantly becomes a question.

Chapter 5: Ko-so-a-do

Japanese has a very convenient and easy to use structure, typically known as the 'ko-so-a-do' system.

Let's take a look at each individual part of the ko-so-a-do system to see how it works.

We'll begin with $\lceil \underline{\mathcal{L}} \rfloor$ (ko).

is used when the speaker wants to refer to something on themselves, or in their direct vicinity:

- なん
 1. <u>こ</u>れ は 何 です か?

 <u>Ko</u>re ha nan desu ka?

 What's <u>this (right here)</u>?
- 2. あなた の かぎ は ここ です。 Anata no kagi ha <u>ko</u>ko desu. Your keys are right here.
- 3. <u>こ</u>の キャンデイー は おいしい です! <u>Kono kyandii ha oishii desu!</u> <u>This</u> candy (right here) is delicious!

 $\lceil \frac{2}{2} \rceil$ refers to something that is not in the vicinity of the speaker, but *is* on or in the vicinity of the listener.

- なん 1. <u>そ</u>れ は 何 です か? <u>So</u>re ha nan desu ka? What's <u>that</u>?
- 2. あなた の かぎ は そこ に あります。 Anata no kagi ha <u>so</u>ko ni arimasu. Your keys are <u>there</u>.
- 3. <u>そ</u>の キャンデイー は おいしい です! <u>So</u>no kyandii ha oishii desu! That candy is delicious.

 $\lceil \underline{b} \rfloor$ refers to something neither in the vicinity of the speaker nor the listener

- 2. あなた の かぎ は <u>あ</u>そこ です。 Anata no kagi ha <u>a</u>soko desu. Your keys are <u>(over)</u> there.
- 3. <u>あ</u>の キャンデイー は おいしい です! Ano kyandii ha oishii desu! That candy (over there) is delicious!

 $\lceil \underline{\mathcal{E}} \rfloor$ is used for asking questions

- 1. <u>ど</u>の かぎ が あなた の かぎ です か?

 <u>Do</u>no kagi ga anata no kagi desu ka?

 <u>Which</u> keys are your keys?
- 2. <u>ど</u>の キャンディー が おいしい です か?

 <u>Do</u>no kyandii ga oishii desu ka?

 <u>Which</u> candy tastes good?

By now, you may be wondering how to know when to use $\lceil 2 n \rfloor \text{ vs } \lceil 20, \rfloor \text{ or } \lceil 2n \rfloor \text{ vs } \lceil 20, \rfloor$ or $\lceil 2n \rfloor \text{ vs } \lceil 2n \rceil$ or $\lceil 2n \rceil$

Paring ko-so-a-do with 「∅:」

 $\lceil \mathcal{ZO}, \rfloor \lceil \mathcal{EO}, \rfloor \lceil \mathcal{BO} \rfloor$ and $\lceil \mathcal{EO} \rfloor$ will always be followed by a <u>noun</u>. You can check the previous examples to confirm this. And in case you still need more convincing, check out the example sentences below. The <u>nouns</u> have been highlighted so they are easier to identify.

- 1. <u>この シャツ</u> は 青いです。 <u>Kono shatsu</u> ha aoi desu. This shirt is blue.
- <u>くるま</u>
 2. <u>その</u> 車 は ピンク です。
 <u>Sono kuruma</u> ha pinku desu.
 <u>That car</u> is pink.
- きま ふじさん
 3. <u>あの 山</u> は 富士山 です。
 Ano yama ha fujisan desu.
 That mountain is Mt. Fuji.
- えいが す
 4. あなた は どの 映画 が 好き です か?
 Anata ha dono eiga ga suki desu ka?
 Which movie do you like?

Pairing ko-so-a-do with 「れ:」

 $\lceil 2n, \rfloor \lceil 2n, \rfloor \lceil 5n \rfloor$ and $\lceil 2n, \rfloor$ will be used when the words themselves refer to the <u>noun</u>.

To help illustrate this point, let's take a look at some more examples.

- なん
 1. <u>これ</u> は 何 です か?

 <u>Kore</u> ha nan desu ka?

 What is <u>this</u>?
- わたし くるま

 2. <u>それ</u> は 私 の 車 です。

 <u>Sore</u> ha watashi no kuruma desu.

 That is my car.
- なん
 3. <u>あれ</u> は 何 です か?

 <u>Are</u> ha nan desu ka?

 What's <u>that</u> (over there)?
- す
 4. <u>どれ</u> が 好き です か?

 <u>Dore</u> ga suki desu ka?

 <u>Which</u> do you like?

Pairing ko-so-a-do with 「こ:」

Lastly, let's take a look at 「こ.」

When we want to talk about locations, we combine ko-so-a-do (depending on the location relative to the speaker) with $\lceil \mathcal{Z}. \rfloor$ And just like you'd expect, all of the same rules that apply to $\lceil \sim 1 \rceil$ also apply to $\lceil \sim 2 \rceil$.

Just to reiterate, if the location we are referring to is in the direct vicinity of the speaker, we use $\lceil \mathcal{Z} \rfloor$. If the location is not in the direct vicinity of the speaker, but *is* near the listener, we use $\lceil \mathcal{Z} \rfloor$. If the location is neither near the speaker nor the listener, we use $\lceil \mathcal{Z} \rfloor$ (not $\lceil \mathcal{Z} \rfloor$). And when we want to ask a question about a location, we use $\lceil \mathcal{Z} \rfloor$.

Let's look at some example sentences to help illustrate:

1. あなた の かぎ は <u>ここ</u> です。 Anata no kagi ha <u>koko</u> desu. Your keys are right <u>here</u>. 2. <u>そこ</u> は あぶない です。 <u>Soko</u> ha abunai desu. <u>That place</u> is dangerous.

3. トイレ は <u>あそこ</u> に あります。
Toire ha <u>asoko</u> ni arimasu.
The bathrooms are <u>over there</u>.

4. ここ は <u>どこ</u> です か? Koko ha <u>doko</u> desu ka? <u>Where</u> is this place?

Chapter Summary:

- We saw how to make use of the ko-so-a-do system to refer to things and places.
- [] is used when referring to something, or a location, near the speaker.
- $\lceil \neq \rfloor$ is used when referring to something, or a location, not near the speaker, but near the listener
- $\lceil b \rceil$ is used when referring to something, or a location, neither near the speaker nor listener. We have to remember, though, that when talking about location we need to use $\lceil b \nmid 2 \rceil$.
- $\lceil \mathcal{E} \rfloor$ is used to ask questions about something, or a location.

Chapter 6: Showing possession with $\lceil \mathcal{O} \rfloor$

Now we're going to take a big step in our language learning journey, and study how to show possession. But don't worry. It's not as hard as you might think. If you've read chapter 5, you've already had a little exposure to this grammar structure.

In English, we use an apostrophe 's' or possessive pronouns (his, her, my, etc...) to show possession or ownership of something. We might say something like, "Mike's car is red," or "His car is red." In Japanese, however, both of these functions are combined into one simple character; $\lceil \mathcal{O}. \rfloor$

To use this construction, we simply place $\lceil \mathcal{O} \rfloor$ after a noun or a pronoun to express possession or ownership.

First, let's look at some examples with $\lceil \mathcal{O} \rfloor$ proceeded by a <u>noun/pronoun</u> and followed by a <u>noun</u>:

- <u>にほん</u> いちばん
- 1. <u>日本 の すし</u> は 一番 おいしい です! <u>*</u>¹

Nihon no sushi ha ichiban oishii desu!

Japan's sushi is the best!

- きのう てんき
- 2. <u>昨日 の 天気</u> はょかった。<u>*</u>2

Kinou no tenki ha yokatta.

Yesterday's weather was great.

- にほんご はつおん むずか
- 3. <u>日本語</u> <u>の</u> <u>発音</u> は 難 しい。

Nihongo no hatuson ha muzukashii.

<u>Japanese pronunciation</u> is hard. (The pronunciation of Japanese is hard)

- あか
- 4. <u>あなた</u> の <u>赤</u> <u>ちゃん</u> は かわいい!

Anata no akachan ha kawaii!

Your baby is cute/adorable!

Some guy's pro tip #1:

いちばん

「一番」 is a very useful expression that translates to 'the best' or 'the most \sim .' The Kanji for this character makes it easy to see why. 「一」 means 'one' and 「番」 means number. Switch it around and we get 'number one.'

the cheapest

A common use is to place $\lceil - \text{#} \rfloor$ just before an adjective to get the superlative form:

一番 長い → the longest 一番 安い ichiban nagai

ichiban nagai ichiban yasui

Some guy's pro tip #2:

Unless a sentence has ended with $\lceil b \rceil \sharp t \rfloor$ or $\lceil b \rceil \sharp t \lambda$, this is the first one we've seen that doesn't include $\lceil c t \rfloor$

This may seem a little confusing, but sentences can be 100% grammatically correct without it (which is why it's not a good idea to think of $\lceil \mathfrak{T} \not \downarrow \rfloor$ as meaning 'to be!'). The only difference between a sentence using $\lceil \mathfrak{T} \not \downarrow \rfloor$ and a sentence *not* using $\lceil \mathfrak{T} \not \downarrow \rfloor$ is the level of politeness.

A sentence which uses $\lceil \mathcal{C} \not \rfloor$ is more polite. In casual situations, however, it is common to not include $\lceil \mathcal{C} \not \rfloor$ at all. As you read through this book you will see more examples of sentences or questions without $\lceil \mathcal{C} \not \rfloor$.

And now, onto the second half of our lesson on $\lceil \mathcal{O} . \rfloor$

We just learned how to use $\lceil \mathcal{O} \rfloor$ in conjunction with a noun. Now, let's see how to use it with pronouns (his, her, I, you, their, we, etc...) to express possession or ownership.

If you've read all of the sentences in this book up until now, then you have already encountered a few Japanese pronouns. So hopefully not all of them are new to you. Here's a chart for quick reference.

私	watashi	<u>I</u>	私 の	watashi no	<u>my</u>
あなた	anata	you	あなたの	anata no	your
私たち	watashitachi	we	私たちの	watashitachi no	our
彼	kare	he	彼の	kare no	his
彼ら	karera	they	彼らの	karera no	their
彼女	kanojo	she	彼女 の	kanojo no	her
彼女ら	kanojora	they(female)	彼女ら の	kanojora no their	(female) *

Some guy's pro tip #3:

You can see that both $\lceil \dot{w} \, \dot{\beta} \rfloor$ and $\lceil \dot{w} \, \dot{\phi} \, \dot{\beta} \rfloor$ mean 'they.' The only difference is we want to use $\lceil \dot{w} \, \dot{\beta} \, \dot{\beta} \, \dot{\beta} \, \dot{\beta} \, \dot{\beta} \, \dot{\beta}$ when the group of people we are referring to consists only of females. If there is a mix-sexed group or a group consisting only of males, we use $\lceil \dot{w} \, \dot{\beta} \, \dot{\beta}$ much like how we can say 'Hey guys!' to a group of people consisting of both sexes.

As you can see, when we want to change a pronoun into a possessive pronoun, we simply append $\lceil \mathcal{O}_{\cdot} \rfloor$

Let's take a look at some example sentences so we can see how they work:

Some guy's pro tip #4:

The idea of 'cuteness' or $\lceil \cancel{b}, \cancel{b}, \cancel{b}, \cancel{b} \rceil$ plays a huge role in Japanese culture, and you are likely to encounter the word hundreds, if not thousands, of times throughout your Japanese studying career. The good news is, you won't have to put much effort into learning the word, since you'll see and hear it so often. For fun, try and Google image search of 'kawaii.'

Let's try some practice problems to check our understanding:

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks of the Japanese sentences with the proper pronoun and/or $\lceil \mathcal{O} \rfloor$ to complete the sentences. Use the given English sentence as a guide. And of course, feel free to consult the chart on pronouns if you need to. You are encouraged to write in Japanese! If you find that writing in Kanji is a bit too difficult at this point, using only Hiragana is perfectly fine. $\pm \frac{5}{2}$

1.	That is my wallet.	
		ふい ち
	それ は	財布 です。
	Sore ha	saifu desu.
2.	Is this your dog?	
	これ は	いぬ 犬 です か?
	Kore ha	inu desu ka?
3.	Japanese pronunciation is	hard.
	にほんご はつ 日本語	りおん むずか 発音 は 難 しい です。
	Nihongo hatsuo	n ha muzukashii desu.
4.	Our house is right here.	いえ 家 は ここ に あります。
		_ _ ie ha koko ni arimasu.
5.	Her hair is the longest.	かみ け いちばん なが _ 髪 の毛 は 一番 長 い です。
		kaminoke ha ichiban nagai desu.

6. Korean food is spicy.

Kankoku ____ ryouri ha karai desu.

7. His name is Sam.

Some guy's pro tip #5:

If you need a little help with writing out the Kanji characters using the correct stroke order (which is extremely important!), I suggest consulting the following website: http://kakijun.jp/

It's written completely in Japanese, but you can just enter the desired Kanji into the search box located in the top left corner and hit 'enter.' Please note that you can only enter one Kanji at a time.

Chapter Summary:

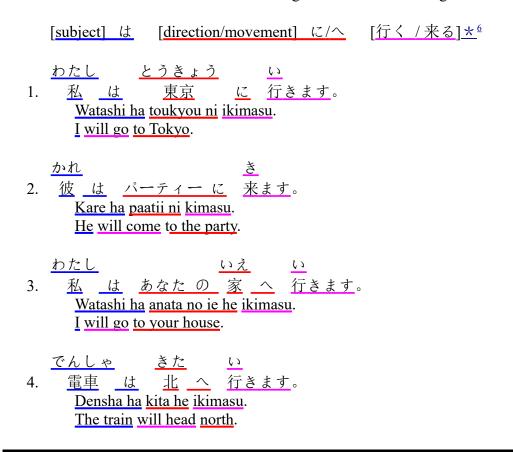
Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- When a noun is followed by $\lceil \mathcal{O} \rfloor$ it acts like an apostrophe 's' and shows possession
- When a pronoun is followed by 「の,」 that pronoun becomes a possessive pronoun いちばん
- The idea of 「かわいい」 is a very important aspect of Japanese culture

Chapter 7: Describing direction and movement with $\lceil \mathcal{L} \rfloor$ and $\lceil \mathcal{L} \rfloor$

So far, our sentences, grammatically speaking, have been quite basic. Now that we're more familiar with the language, it's about time we start introducing some particles.

The structure of the sentences we'll be looking at will look something like this:



Some guy's pro tip #6:

Grammatically speaking, when describing location or movement, using either $\lceil \mathcal{L} \rfloor$ or $\lceil \land \rfloor$ is acceptable. However, I find that in most cases people tend to use $\lceil \mathcal{L} \rfloor$

Now let's look at some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Using the given subject, location and verb, translate the following English sentences into Japanese.

Ex. I am going to America. (私 /アメリカ / 行きます)

私 は アメリカ に 行きます 。

1. He is coming to Japan. (彼 / 日本 /来ます)

2. We will go to the store. (私 たち/ストア/行きます)

3. They will come to my house. (彼ら/ 私 の 家 /来ます)

4. She will come to my house. (彼女 / 私 の 家 /来ます)

5. They will go to school. (彼 ら / 学校 /行きます)

6. Will you come to the party? (あなた / パーティー / 来ます か)

わたし かのじょ いえ い 7. I am going to her house. (私 / 彼女 の 家 /行きます)

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

61

- 「行く」 is the verb for 'to go'
- ・ 「来る」is the verb for 'to come'

Chapter 8: Describing locations with 12

In the previous chapter, we saw how we can use $\lceil \mathcal{L} \rfloor$ or $\lceil \land \rfloor$ to describe the movement or direction of something. Now, we're going to take a look at another very common use for the particle $\lceil \mathcal{L}; \rfloor$ describing locations.

You may have seen in past chapters, that on occasion, I used $\lceil \mathcal{L} \rfloor$ to describe where something was located. If you were confused, or a little curious about it, here's where you will find the answers to any questions you may have. But before we really tackle this particular use for $\lceil \mathcal{L}, \rfloor$ we first need to take another look at perhaps two of the most important verbs in the Japanese language, $\lceil \mathcal{L}, \mathcal{L} \rceil$ and $\lceil \mathcal{L}, \mathcal{L} \rceil$

In English, when we want to describe where someone or something is located, we may use sentences like, 'He is on the table,' or 'The cup is on the table,' with no regard to *what* is actually on the table. When speaking Japanese, however, there is a very important distinction between living and non-living things. In Japanese, the two previous sentences would look like this (see if you can spot the difference):

And

In the first example, we ended our sentence with $\lceil \iota \circ \delta, \rfloor$ and in our second example, we ended our sentence with $\lceil \delta \delta. \rfloor$ What's the difference? I'll tell you (after all, that's the whole point of this book!).

That's why in the above sentences, when talking about 'He,' (an animate, living object) we used $\lceil \iota \rceil$ and when talking about the cup (a nonliving, inanimate object), we used $\lceil \delta \rceil$ to describe their locations.

Some guy's pro tip #7:

When talking about certain things, it seems that sometimes there may be a little gray area as to whether whatever it is your talking about should be described with $\lceil \upsilon \ \delta \rfloor$ or $\lceil \rlap{/}{b} \ \delta . \rfloor$ Which should we use for a tree? Certainly, we consider plants and trees to be alive, but they are certainly not animate. So, when talking about plants, we need to use $\lceil \rlap{/}{b} \ \delta . \rfloor$ And what about robots or cyborgs? Certainly, they are animate, but most people wouldn't argue that they are living. Thus, robots and the like, too, must be marked with $\lceil \rlap{/}{b} \ \delta . \rfloor$ And how about ghosts? Even though they are definitely not alive, when referring to ghosts we actually need to use $\lceil \rlap{/}{\upsilon} \ \delta . \rfloor$

Now that that lengthy explanation of $\lceil \iota \wr \delta \rfloor$ and $\lceil \delta \delta \rceil$ is out of the way, let's get back to the main focus of this chapter (I almost forgot what it was!) and take a more in-depth look at describing locations $\lceil \iota \xi \rfloor$ with some more example sentences.

Our sentence structure will look something like this:

```
[subject]
           は
                [location]
                          に
                              [いる / ある]
  かのじょ
             にほん
             日本 <u>に</u> います。
1.
     Kanojo ha nihon ni imasu.
     She is in Japan.
  かれ
   彼 は アメリカ に いません。
     Kare ha amerika ni imasen.
     He is not in America.
                     わたし
  わたし
            えいち
                                         なか
            財布は
                       私 のポケットの中にあります。
     Watashi no saifu ha watashi no poketto no naka ni arimasu.
     My wallet is in my pocket.
  かれ
          くるま
   彼の
           車 は ここにありません。
     Kare no kuruma ha koko ni arimasen.
     His car is not here.
  かれ
          くるま
           車 は あそこに あります。
     Kare no kuruma ha asoko ni arimasu.
     His car is over there.
```

You may be wondering why instead of using $\lceil \wp \rceil$ and $\lceil \delta \rceil$ we are using $\lceil \wp \rceil \rceil / \lceil \wp \rceil \rceil$ to $\lceil \delta \rceil$ and $\lceil \delta \rceil \rceil \rceil \rceil \rceil \rceil \rangle \rangle \rangle \rangle$ in our sentences.

The reason is that both $\lceil \wp \rceil$ and $\lceil \delta \rceil$ are verbs in their dictionary forms. $\lceil \wp \rceil \rceil$ and $\lceil \delta \rceil$ by $\lceil \wp \rceil \rceil$ are simply conjugations of $\lceil \wp \rceil \rceil$ and $\lceil \delta \rceil \rceil$, respectively. $\lceil \wp \rceil \rceil \rceil$ and $\lceil \delta \rceil \rceil \rceil$ are the negative conjugations of $\lceil \wp \rceil \rceil$ and $\lceil \delta \rceil \rceil$, respectively. We will look at this point in more detail in later chapters.

In the mean time, let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks with either 「います」/「いません」or「あります」/「ありません」

1. He is in the house.

2. The bag is inside the locker.

3. I am not in America.

4. The Grand Canyon is in Arizona.

5. The monkey is in the tree.

6. The ball is not on the table.
うえ ボール は テーブル の 上 に。 Booru ha teeburu no ue ni
7. I am in Japan.
わたし にほん 私 は 日本 に。 Watashi ha nihon ni
8. The computer is not in the room.
へや パソコン は 部屋 に。 Pasokon ha heya ni
9. He is not in the house.
ははまって
彼 は 家 に。 Kare ha ie ni
10. My keys are on the table.
わたし 私 の かぎ は テーブル の 上 に
Watashi no kagi ha teeburu no ue ni
11. Where are you?
あなた は どこ にか?
Anata ha doko nika?
napter Summary:

<u>Ch</u>

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- In addition to movement and direction, $\lceil \mathcal{L} \rfloor$ is the particle used to mark locations
- $\lceil \iota_i \sharp \dagger \rfloor$ is used to describe the location of living, animate things
- $\lceil b \rceil \sharp j \rfloor$ is used to describe the location of non-living, inanimate things
- 「いません」is the polite, negative form of「いる」
- 「ありません」is the polite, negative form of「ある」
- Plants, flowers, robots, etc... all take 「ある」
- Ghosts take「いる」

Chapter 9: A note on verbs

A very important note about Japanese verbs is that while English has three temporal relationships (past, present, and future), Japanese only has two (past and non-past). In other words, something is either in the past, or it's not.

That's great news for us! That means there is a whole time frame we don't have to worry about when conjugating (that is, making our verbs take on a past, present, or future tense).

Now, you might be asking 'Well, if that's the case, how do Japanese people know whether someone is talking about right now (the present), or later (the future)?'

The answer to that is simple; context.

Given the context of a sentence or situation, it's easy to determine whether someone is talking about an event that is happening right now, or an event that will happen in the future. For example, if someone uses a word like 'tomorrow,' then it's obvious that they are not talking about the past, and certainly they aren't talking about right now. So, they *must* be talking about some event that is going to happen later (in the future).

Perhaps a couple example sentences might make this a little clearer.

Conversation 1:

あした なに Andy: 明日 、 何 を します か? Ashita, nani wo shimasu ka? What are you doing tomorrow?

にほんご べんきょう
Sally: 日本語 を 勉強 します。
Nihongo wo benkyou shimasu.
I'm going to study Japanese.

Conversation 2:

にほんご べんきょう
Sally: 日本語 を 勉強 します。
Nihongo wo benkyou shimasu.
I study Japanese.

わたし Andy: 私 も! Watashi mo! Me too! Notice how Sally from Conversation 1 and 2 says the exact same thing, but given the context of the conversations, the meanings are quite different.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- Japanese has only two tenses; past and non-past
- Context provides the information needed to determine the temporal-status of the sentence

Chapter 10: Conjugating verbs to the ます-form

This will mark the first chapter in which we really focus on conjugating our verbs. Verb conjugation is what speaking a language really all boils down to. Talking about what we did in the past, what we will do in the future, what we would have done, what we should have done, what we want to do, etc... is all determined by how we conjugate our verbs. So let's take it slow, and ease our way into this new turn on our path towards speaking Japanese.

You may have nightmarish flashbacks of your Jr. High or High School French class when you hear the word 'conjugation,' but let me assure you that conjugating verbs in Japanese is very straightforward and quite logical.

There are a few steps we must go through in our introduction to verb conjugation, however. First and foremost, when we want to conjugate a verb, we must first find its 'stem.'

In fact, we've already seen a little bit of this in chapter 8, when we wrote $\lceil \wp \sharp \dagger \rfloor$ and $\lceil \delta \vartheta \sharp \dagger \rfloor$ instead of $\lceil \wp \vartheta \vartheta \rfloor$ and $\lceil \delta \vartheta \vartheta \vartheta \vartheta \rbrace$.

Finding the ます-stem:

To begin, we'll always start with the 'dictionary form' of the verb. 'Dictionary form' refers to the basic, unconjugated form of a verb.

There are three types of verbs in Japanese, creatively known as Type I, Type II, and Type III verbs. Almost all verbs fall into either the Type I or Type II categories, with only two irregular verbs falling into the Type III category.

First, let's look at the Type I verbs.

Type I verbs:

The dictionary form of Type I verbs will always end with a character from the $\lceil \vec{j} \rfloor$ column of our Hiragana chart (\vec{j} 、る、む、ぬ、す、つ、〈、、or ぶ).

Here are a few example verbs.

<u>す</u> 吸う	suu	to breathe in/smoke
<u>すわ</u> 座 <u>る</u>	suwaru	to sit
<u>よ</u> 読む	yomu	to read
<u>し</u> 死ぬ	shinu	to die
<u>はな</u> 話 <u>す</u>	<u>hanasu</u>	to speak/talk
<u>も</u> 持つ	motsu	to hold
<u>か</u> 買う	kau	to buy
<u>き</u> 聞く	kiku	to ask/listen
<u>およ</u> <u>泳 ぐ</u>	oyogu	to swim
<u>と</u> 飛ぶ	tobu	to jump/fly

First, the last character of the word needs to be changed to its corresponding character in the $\lceil \iota \rangle$ column of our Hiragana chart. Then, we simply add $\lceil \sharp \sharp . \rfloor$ That's it!

Let's take a look at some examples and walk through the process together.

よ From our list above, we'll use「読む.」

1

The last character of 「読む」 is 「む,」 so let's find it in our chart (located in the 「う」 column). Now, we want to find the character it corresponds to in the 「い」 column. Looking at the same row that

 $\lceil t \rfloor$ is in, we can see that $\lceil t \rfloor$'s corresponding $\lceil \iota \iota \rfloor$ character is $\lceil \lambda \rfloor$.

	Hiragana									
	あ	а	<i>c y</i>	i	う	u	え	е	お	0
k	か	ka	き	ki	<	ku	け	ke	2	ko
S	5	sa	し	shi	す	su	せ	se	そ	so
t	た	ta	ち	chi	つ	tsu	て	te	2	to
n	な	na	に	ni	ぬ	nu	ね	ne	の	no
h	は	ha	V	hi	3,	fu	^	he	ほ	ho
m	ま	ma	み	mi	む	mu	め	me	ŧ	mo
y	や	ya			ゆ	yu			よ	yo
r	6	ra	り	ri	る	ru	れ	re	ろ	ro
W	わ	wa							を	wo
	h	n							'	

Next, we just have to change $\lceil t \rfloor$ to $\lceil \beta \rfloor$ and append $\lceil t \rceil$, \rfloor and we're done. We now have our new, fully conjugated Type I verb: 読みます.

See, that's not so bad, right?

Let's look at some other examples. See if you can follow along and get the same result:

Dictionary form		<u>ます-stem</u>		<u>ます-form</u>
はな 話 す (to speak)	\rightarrow	話し	\rightarrow	話します (will speak)
の 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow	飲み	\rightarrow	飲みます (will drink)
すわ 座 る (to sit)	\rightarrow	座り	\rightarrow	座ります (will sit)
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買い	\rightarrow	買います (will buy)

Next, let's look at the Type II verbs.

Type II Verbs:

Identifying Type II verbs can be a little tricky at first.

All Type II verbs end in $\lceil 3 \rfloor$ and will always be proceeded by a character from either the $\lceil \frac{1}{3} \rfloor$ or $\lceil \frac{1}{3} \rceil$ column of our chart.

When written out in Romaji (letters from the English alphabet), Type II verbs end with either '~eru' or '~iru.' Here are some example verbs:

Dictionary form	<u>Romaji</u>	Definition
<u>た</u>		
<u>食べる</u>	taberu	to eat
tz		
<u>おし</u> 教 <u>える</u>	oshieru	to teach
<u>な</u>		
投げる	nageru	to throw
<u>お</u>		
<u>い</u> 落ちる	ochiru	to fall
ŧ		
<u>あ</u> 飽きる	akiru	to grow tired of
でき		
<u>出来る</u>	dekiru	to be able

Of course, this 'rule' isn't without exception. There are some Type I verbs that follow this pattern and appear to be Type II verbs, but actually aren't. Here are a few Type I verbs that look like Type II verbs:

Dictionary form	<u>Romaji</u>	Definition
はい		
<u>はい</u> 入る	hairu	to enter
*		
<u>き</u> 切る	kiru	to cut
しゃべる	shaberu	to chat
1+1		
<u>はし</u> 走 <u>る</u>	hashiru	to run

Naturally, there are more, but for now it's only important to understand that sometimes there are exceptions to be careful of when conjugating our verbs.

Dictionary form	<u>ます-stem</u>		<u>ます-form</u>
た 食べる (to eat) →	食べる	\rightarrow	食べます (will eat)
み 見る (to watch/see) →	見 る	\rightarrow	見ます (will watch/see)
な 投げる (to throw) →	投げ る	\rightarrow	投げます (will throw)
お 落ちる (to fall) →	落ち る	\rightarrow	落ちます (will fall)
で 出る (to leave/go out)→	出 る	\rightarrow	出ます (will leave/go out)
き 着る (to wear) →	着 る	\rightarrow	着ます (will wear)

Finally, let's look at our Type III verbs.

Type III verbs:

The verbs that belong to the Type III category are the irregular verbs of the Japanese language. Don't worry, though. Unlike English, which is filled with irregular verbs, Japanese keeps it down to just two.

Dictionary form		<u>ます-stem</u>		<u>ます-form</u>
する (to do)	\rightarrow	します	\rightarrow	します (will do)
女 2 (4		きャナナ		き オナナ (:11)
来る (to come)	\rightarrow	来 ます	\rightarrow	来ます (will come)

「すます.」 Unfortunately, you'd be wrong. And at a cursory glance 「来る」 seems to follow the Type II verb rule pattern, but please notice how the reading of the 「来」 character changes from 「く」 in

the dictionary form to $\lceil \xi \rfloor$ in the $\xi \tau$ -form.

Fortunately, since we'll be using these two verbs on quite a regular basis, we'll see that it doesn't take any extra effort to specifically remember their quirky rules.

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Dictionary form	<u>ます-form</u>
た 1. 食べる (to eat)	
の 2. 飲む (to drink)	
し 3. 死ぬ (to die)	
4. する (to do)	
かんが 5. 考 える (to think)	
よ 6. 読む (to read)	,
はし 7. 走る (to run)	
く 8. 来る (to come)	
はな 9. 話 す (to speak)	
で 10. 出る (to leave)	

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- How to find the \sharp \sharp -stem of a verb and conjugate a verb to its \sharp \sharp -form
- Type I verbs will always end with a character from the 「う」column of our Hiragana chart (う、る、む、ぬ、す、つ、ぶ、く or ぐ)
- Type II verbs end in $\lceil 3 \rfloor$ and will always be proceeded by a character from either the $\lceil 2 \rceil$ or $\lceil 4 \rceil$ column of our chart
- Not all verbs that follow the Type II verb rules are Type II verbs

<

- Type III verbs are 「する」and「来る」
- Type III verbs are irregular, and follow a different set of rules for conjugating

Chapter 11: Making verbs negative with 「ません」

Now that we understand how to find the $\sharp \dagger$ -stem of a verb, we can begin to express ourselves in a multitude of ways. The first avenue we are going to walk down is how to make 'negative sentences.'

Most of the sentences we have seen so far have been in the affirmative, so now it's time to learn how to go about making *negative* sentences.

With our newly acquired knowledge regarding finding the $\sharp t$ -stem of a verb, making negative sentences will be a breeze.

Let's take a look at some examples.

Dictionary form		<u>ます-stem</u>		<u>ません-form</u>		
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買い ます	\rightarrow	買いません (will not buy)		
の 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow	飲み ます	\rightarrow	飲みません (will not drink)		
い 行く (to go)	\rightarrow	行き ます	\rightarrow	行きません (will not go)		
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べ ます	\rightarrow	食べません (will not eat)		
み 見る (to watch/see)	\rightarrow	見 ます	\rightarrow	見ません (will not watch/see)		
な 投げる (to throw)	\rightarrow	投げ ます	\rightarrow	投げません (will not throw)		
する (to do)	\rightarrow	します	\rightarrow	しません (will not do)		
く 来る (to come)	\rightarrow	き 来 ます	\rightarrow	き 来ません (will not come)		

わたし <u>た</u> 1. 私 は なっとう を <u>食べません</u>。<u>*</u> Watashi ha nattou wo <u>tabemasen</u>.

わたし <u>な</u> 2. 私 は ボール を <u>投げません</u>。 Watashi ha booru wo nagemasen.

I won't throw the ball.

いぬ <u>で</u> 3. 犬 は <u>出てきません</u>。

I don't eat nattou.

Inu ha <u>detekimasen</u>. The dog won't come out.

かのじょ <u>み</u>
4. 彼女 は テレビ を <u>見ません</u>。
Kanojo ha terebi wo <u>mimasen</u>.
She doesn't watch TV.

ねこ \underline{b} 5. あの 猫 は 落ちてきません。

Ano neko ha <u>ochitekimasen</u>. That cat won't fall.

かれ <u>き</u> 6. 彼 は スーツ を 着ません。

Kare ha suutsu wo kimasen. He doesn't wear suits.

Some guy's pro tip #8:

Natto is an extremely popular food in Japan. It's made of fermented soybeans, and is a staple in most people's diets. It's known for it's rather unpleasant odor, but also for being extremely healthy. See if you can find some at your local market and give it a try. Be sure to stir it up first, before eating!

Practice problems:

<u>Dictionary form</u> <u>ません-form</u>

た

0)

L

ょ

はし

はな

<

7

Chapter Summary:

- The negative form of $\lceil \sim \sharp \, \mathsf{t} \, \rfloor$ is $\lceil \sim \sharp \, \mathsf{t} \, \mathsf{k} \, \rfloor$
- To conjugate to the $\sharp \ \forall \lambda$ -form, we simply append $\lceil \ \sharp \ \forall \lambda \rfloor$ to our verb's $\sharp \ \tau$ -stem

Chapter 12: Making verbs negative with 「ない」

So far in this book, we've only seen sentences in the 'polite form.' In this chapter, we are going to learn how to use a more casual form to make verbs negative, using $\lceil t \rangle$.

An interesting thing about the Japanese language is that there is a huge difference in the way polite Japanese and non-polite Japanese is spoken. When speaking to a stranger, someone older than ourselves, our boss etc..., we'd want to use polite Japanese. On the other hand, when we're talking with our friends or someone in a 'socially lower position,' non-polite Japanese is appropriate (and much more natural). In an attempt to keep this book as simple as possible, I have written almost every example sentence using the polite form, but now is a great time to introduce the casual & \(\frac{1}{12}\)-form.

Conjugating a verb to its ない-form can seem a little tricky at first, but with practice, it will get easier. To start, we're going to need to consider our Type I, Type II, and Type III verbs again.

Type I Verbs:

If you remember what we learned in chapter 10, Type I verbs are verbs that end with a character from the $\lceil \tilde{j} \rfloor$ column of our Hiragana chart.

Conjugating a Type I verb to its ない-form requires three steps:

- 1. Identify the dictionary form of the verb
- 2. Take the last character of the verb and change it to its corresponding 「あ」 character
- 3. add 「ない」

Here's our handy dandy Hiragana chart for easy reference:

	Hiragana									
	あ	а	()	i	う	u	え	е	お	0
k	か	ka	き	ki	<	ku	け	ke	2	ko
S	3	sa	L	shi	す	su	せ	se	そ	so
t	た	ta	ち	chi	つ	tsu	7	te	と	to
n	な	na	に	ni	ぬ	nu	ね	ne	の	no
h	は	ha	V	hi	.ک	fu	^	he	ほ	ho
m	ま	ma	み	mi	む	mu	め	me	ŧ	mo
y	や	ya			ゆ	yu			よ	yo
r	5	ra	ŋ	ri	る	ru	れ	re	ろ	ro
W	わ	wa			う	u			を	wo
	h	n								

Let's do one together. We'll look at the verb for 'to read;' 読む:

- 1. Our verb in its dictionary form is 「読む」
- 2. The last character is $\lceil t \rceil$ so its corresponding $\lceil b \rceil$ character is $\lceil t \rceil$. Now we have 読ま-
- 3. add「ない」and we end up with「読まない;」'will not read'

か

Let's try another one. This time let's look at the verb for 'to buy'; 買う:

- 1. Our verb in its dictionary form is 「買う」
- 2. The last character is $\lceil \hat{\sigma}, \rfloor$ so its corresponding $\lceil \delta \rfloor$ character is $\lceil \delta \rangle$. Now we have \mathbb{E}^{n}
- 3. Add「ない」 and we end up with 「買わない;」'will not buy'

Try a few yourself. Change the following Type I verbs to their ない-forms:

	Dictionary form	ない-form
1.	か 書く (to write)	
2.	はな 話 す (to speak)	
3.	し 死ぬ (to die)	
4.	はし 走る (to run)	
5.	か 買う (to buy)	
6.	たた 畳 む (to fold)	

Type II Verbs:

Did you make it through the Type I verbs? Great, because I have some good news. Type II verbs are much easier to conjugate to the ない-form than Type I verbs.

Changing a Type II verb to its ない-form also requires three steps:

- 1. Identify the verb's dictionary form
- 2. Drop the final $\lceil 3 \rfloor$ character
- 3. add 「ない」

Let's look at one of my favorite verbs, 'to eat;' 食べる:

- 1. The dictionary form is「食べる」
- 2. The ます-stem is「食べ」

to

3. add「ない」to get「食べない;」'will not eat'

Z

Let's try another one with verb for 'to watch/see:' 見る:

- 1. The dictionary form is「見る」
- 2. The ます-stem is 「見」

2

3. add「ない」to get「見ない;」will not watch/see

Try a few yourself. Change the following Type II verbs to their ない-forms:

Dictionary form	<u>ない-form</u>
1. あげる (to give)	
でき 2. 出来る (to be able)	
こた 3. 答える (to answer)	
み 4. 見せる (to show)	
み 5. 見つける (to find)	
ね 6. 寝る (to sleep)	
おし 7. 教 える (to teach)	
し 8. 閉める (to close)	

Type III verbs:

In Japanese, as you already know, there are two irregular verbs: 「する」 and 「来る.」 Here are their ない-forms:

<

Dictionary form		<u>ない-form</u>
する (to do)	\rightarrow	しない (won't do)
く 来る (to come)	→	こ 来ない (won't come)

Notice that the character 「来」in 「来る,」when it's in its ない-form, is pronounced as 「こ.」

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- When conjugating verbs, it is important to recognize whether that particular verb is Type I, Type II or Type III
- To conjugate a Type I verb to its ない-form, change the trailing character to its あ-equivalent, and add 「ない」
- To conjugate a Type II verb to its ない-form, drop the trailing 「る」 character, and add 「ない」
- The ない-form of する is 「しない」く こ
- The ない-form of「来る」is 「来ない」
- The $\alpha \cup$ -form is the casual form of the $\xi \notin \lambda$ -form

Chapter 13: い and な-adjectives

Now we're going to delve a little deeper into the recesses of the Japanese language and take a look at how to make use of all of the beautiful adjectives that exist out there. Before we start digging too deep, however, let's take a look at a general overview.

The first thing you should know is that there are two kinds of adjectives in Japanese. That's right... two. They are creatively known as $\[\]$ -adjectives and $\[\]$ -adjectives. $\[\]$ -adjectives end with, you guessed it, the $\[\]$ -adjectives, however, do *not* end in $\[\]$ -adjectives, however, do *not* end in $\[\]$ -adjectives, however, do *not* end in $\[\]$ -adjectives, however, do *not* end in

While both \$\tipsis \text{-adjectives and \$\tipsis \text{-adjectives serve the same purpose (describing nouns), their uses are quite different and can be a little confusing, even for a seasoned Japanese speaker. We'll take an indepth look at the two, starting with \$\tipsis \text{-adjectives}\$.

43-adjectives:

As mentioned above, ι_{i} -adjectives are adjectives that end with the $\lceil \iota_{i} \rceil$ character. However, please be careful. ι_{i} -adjectives are *not* necessarily adjectives that end with the letter 'i.'

す

That's why it's so important to master the Kana. If we look at a word like 「好き」 (suki), which means 'love' or 'liking,' and we were to read it as it is written in Romaji (that is, the English alphabet), you would most likely conclude that it is an い-adjective, since 'suki' ends in 'i.' However, you would be wrong. It does end in 'i,' but it does *not* end in 「い.」 It ends in 「き;」 huge difference. 「好き」 is actually a latage a-adjective!

Using \$\igcsig \text{-adjectives} is very straightforward, though. We can simply append the noun directly to the \$\igcsig \text{-adjective} itself, like so:

Let's look at some example sentences.

しろ
2. この 白い キャンディー は おいしい です。
Kono <u>shiroi kyandii</u> ha oishii desu!
This white <u>candy</u> is delicious!

わたし や ひと す

3. 私 は優しい 人 が 好き です。

Watashi ha <u>yasashii</u> <u>hito</u> ga suki desu. I like nice people.

かれ <u>むずか</u> す

4. 彼 は 難 しい ゲーム が 好き です。

Kare ha muzukashii geemu ga suki desu.

He likes difficult games.

ちい いぬ

5. その 小さい 犬 は かわいい です。

Sono chiisai inu ha kawaii desu.

That small dog is cute.

Now, let's take a look another way to use ι_{3} -adjectives. This time, the ι_{3} -adjective and the noun will not be adjacent to each other, but will be separated by $\lceil \iota \sharp \rfloor$ or $\lceil \sharp \sharp \rceil$ and will look something like this:

[noun] は/が [い-adjective] です

1. これがおいしいです!

Kore ga oishii desu!

This is delicious!

<u>わたし</u> <u>あお</u>

2. <u>私</u> <u>のシャツ</u>は <u>青</u>いです。

Watashi no shatsu ha aoi desu.

My shirt is blue.

むずか

3. <u>この ゲーム</u> が 難 <u>しい</u> です。

Kono geemu ga muzukashii desu.

This game is difficult.

<u>にほんご</u> たの

4. 日本語 は 楽 しい です!

Nihongo ha tanoshii desu!

Japanese is fun!

おもしろ

5. その マンガ は 面白 い です。*****²

Sono manga ha omoshiroi desu.

That manga is cool.

Some guy's pro tip #9:

You will often see the word 「面白 い」 translated as 'interesting,' but the way it's used in typical, daily Japanese conversation, 'interesting' is not always the best or most accurate translation. It can also take on a much more positive meaning; indicating that something is neat, cool, great, awesome, etc...

Now for the second half of our lesson on adjectives.

な-adjectives:

 α -adjectives, like you'd expect, are words used to describe nouns, just like α -adjectives. However, the way we use α -adjectives is quite different.

As noted above, &-adjectives are *not* adjectives that end in $[& & \\ & & \\$

きれい	kirei	pretty, beautiful	_* 10
<u>へん</u> 変	hen	strange, weird	_
<u>べんり</u> 便利	benri	convenient, useful	_
<u>たいへん</u> 大変	taihen	dreadful	_
<u>ふべん</u> 不便	fuben	inconvenient	_
<u>しず</u> 静 か	shizuka	quiet	_

Some guy's pro tip #10:

You may have noticed that the first $\[\[\]$ adjective in our list $(\[\] \]$ ends in $\[\] \[\]$ Despite that, it is $\[\] \[\] \] \[\] \[\] \[\] \$

not an い-adjective. If you were to look at how it is written in Kanji (綺麗) it may be easier to understand why (the 「い」 character is a part of the Kanji character itself, and not written in Hiragana, あお たか

like we see in words like 「青い」 or 「高い」). Fortunately, there are very few cases where a α -adjective will end in 「い,」 so we'll just have to commit this oddity to memory.

Now let's look at some example sentences with our new α -adjectives. The structure will look something like this:

[subject] は [<u>&-adjective</u>] <u>&</u> [noun] です

<u>え</u> 1. これ は <u>きれい な</u> <u>絵</u> です。

Kore ha <u>kirei na</u> <u>e</u> desu.

This is a pretty picture.

わたし へん ひと

2. 私 は 変 な 人 では ない です。

Watashi ha hen na hito deha nai desu.

I'm not strange person.

<u>べんり</u> どうぐ

3. これ は 便利 な 道具 です。

Kore ha benri na dougu desu.

This is a <u>useful</u> tool.

<u>たいへん</u> <u>じょうきょう</u> 4. それ は 大変 な 状況

Sore ha taihen na joukyou desu.

That is a dangerous/terrible situation.

ふべん じかん

5. それ は 不便 な 時間 です。

Sore ha <u>fuben na jikan</u> desu.

That is an inconvenient time.

ながさき <u>しず</u> <u>まち</u>

6. 長崎 は 静かな 町 ではないです。

Nagasaki ha shizuka na machi deha nai desu.

Nagasaki is not a quiet city.

And as you can imagine, just like with our $\$ -adjectives, $\$ -adjectives can also appear without being proceeded by the noun which they are modifying.

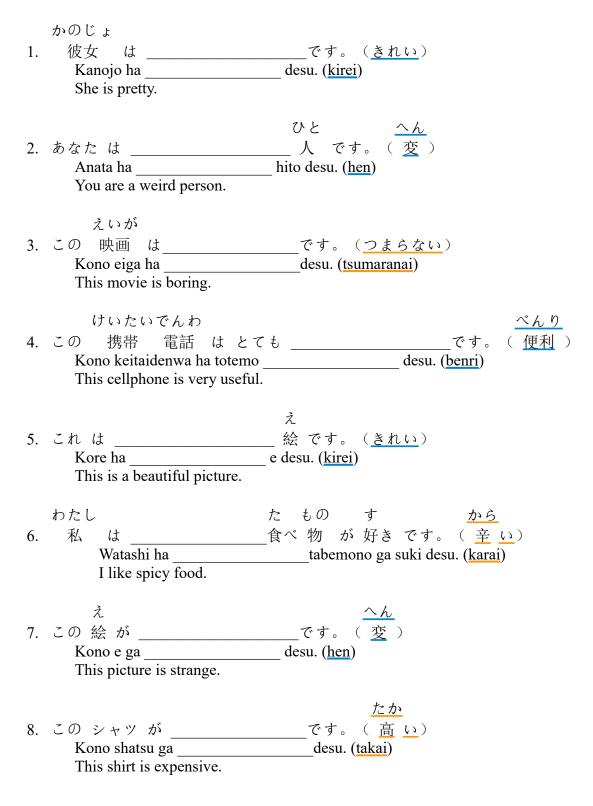
The following example sentences will have our $\[& \]$ -adjectives and nouns separated by either $\[& \]$ or $\[& \]$ Notice that we do *not* need need to use $\[& \]$ in this case.

- え 1. <u>この 絵</u> が <u>きれい</u> です。 <u>Kono e</u> ga <u>kirei</u> desu. <u>This picture</u> is <u>pretty</u>.
- <u>わたし</u> <u>へん</u> 2. <u>私</u> は 変 では ない です。 <u>Watashi</u> ha <u>hen</u> deha nai desu. <u>I'm</u> not <u>strange</u>.
- 3. <u>この 道具</u> は 便利 です。 Kono dougu ha benri desu. This tool is useful.
- <u>じょうきょう</u> たいへん 4. その 状況 が 大変 です。 <u>Sono joukyou</u> ga <u>taihen</u> desu. <u>That situation</u> is <u>dangerous/terrible</u>.
- 5. <u>その</u>時間 は 不便 です。 Sono jikan ha fuben desu. That time is inconvenient.
- <u>ながさき</u> <u>しず</u>
 6. <u>長崎</u> は <u>静</u> か では ない です。
 <u>Nagasaki</u> ha <u>shizuka</u> deha nai desu.
 <u>Nagasaki</u> is not <u>quiet</u>.

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks of the following sentences with the given $\[\]$ -adjectives and $\[\]$ -adjectives. Remember that sometimes we may need to append $\[\]$ $\[\]$



9. これ は Kore ha This a useful cellphone.	けいたいでんわ <u>べんり</u> 携帯 電話 です。(<u>便利</u>) keitaidenwa desu. (<u>benri</u>)
とうきょう 10. 東京 は Toukyou ha Tokyo is not a quiet city.	まち <u>しず</u> 町 では ない。 (<u>静 か</u>) machi deha nai. (<u>shizuka</u>)
ながさき 11. 長崎 は Nagasaki ha Nagasaki is not quiet.	<u>しず</u> では ない です。(<u>静</u> <u>か</u>) deha nai desu. (<u>shizuka</u>)
かのじょ 12. 彼女 が Kanojo ga She is nice.	<u>やさ</u> です。(優 <u>しい</u>) desu. (<u>yasashii</u>)

Chapter summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- \$\tau_{\gamma}\$-adjectives do not require any modification, and can simply precede the noun which they are describing
- 13-adjectives may also appear at the end of sentences without directly modifying any nouns
- な-adjectives, when followed by a noun, must be appended with 「な」
- な-adjectives may also appear without directly modifying nouns with 「な」
- Knowing how to read Kana and Kanji will make learning Japanese much easier in the future!

Chapter 14: Using verbs with「を」

Sometimes when we use a verb, we want to pair it up with an object, or some receiver of an action. We can accomplish this by linking the two with the particle $\lceil \varepsilon . \rfloor$ Here is the structure we'll be focusing on in this chapter.

[subject] は/が [object] を [verb]

Let's look at some example sentences.

- 1. 私 は テレビ を 見ます。 Watashi ha terebi wo mimasu. I watch television.
- <u>かれ</u> <u>にほんご</u> <u>べんきょう</u>
 2. <u>彼 は 日本語 を 勉強 します</u>

 Kare ha nihongo wo benkyou shimasu.

Kare ha nihongo wo benkyou shimasu. He studies Japanese.

- かあ 3. <u>お母さんはごはんを作る。</u> Okaasan ha gohan wo tsukuru. Mom cooks meals.
- きゅうにゅう の 4. ねこは 牛乳 を飲みます。 Neko ha gyuunyuu wo nomimasu.

Cats drink milk.

<u>せんせい</u> <u>えいご</u> <u>おし</u> 5. <u>みさ 先生 は 英語 を 教 える</u>。

Misa-sensei ha eigo wo oshieru. Ms. Misa teaches English.

In the first sentence from the above examples, we can see that the verb is 「見ます」(to watch), and what we are watching (the object) is 「テレビ」(television). To indicate that we are watching television, we use 「を.」

Z

べんきょう In the second example, we can also see how we use「を」to connect our verb,「 勉強 しま にほんご

す」(study), with our object, 「 日本語 」(Japanese), to indicate that what he studies is Japanese.

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Unscramble the following Japanese words to match the English translation.

Ex. She eats sushi.

彼女 は すし を 食べます

1. I watch television.

2. She drinks coffee.

3. I will write the report.

4. I drive cars.

5. They listen to music.

6. I speak Japanese.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

• The particle 「を」 is used to connect an object with a verb

Chapter 15: Talking about abilities with 「こと ができる」

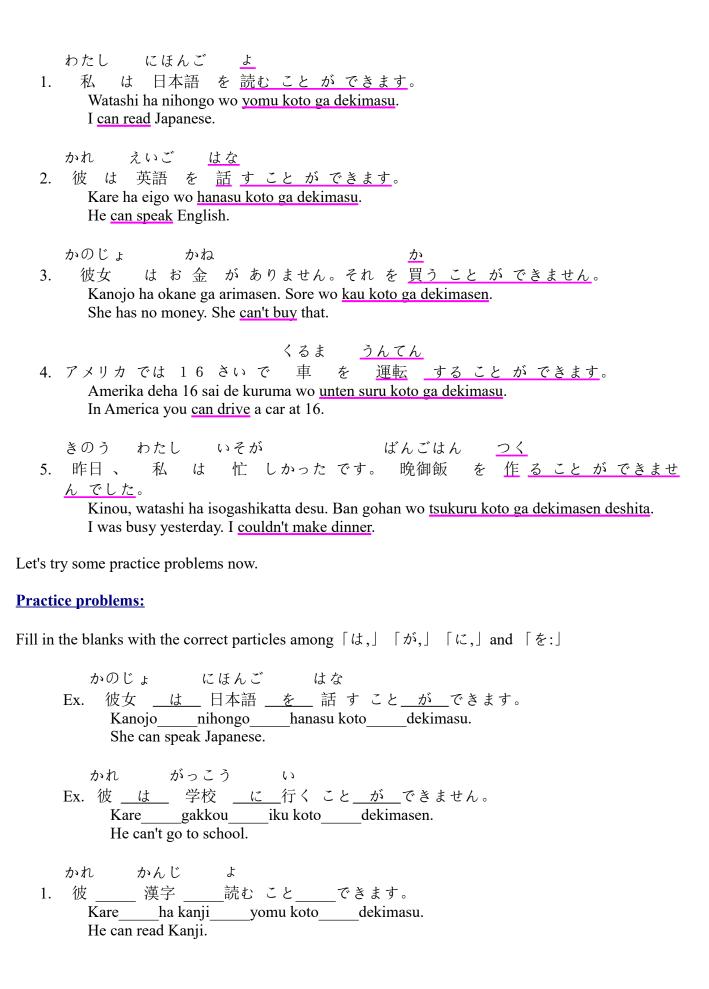
This is perhaps one of the most helpful structures beginners can learn. We use it to talk about someone or something's ability (or *inability*) to do a certain action.

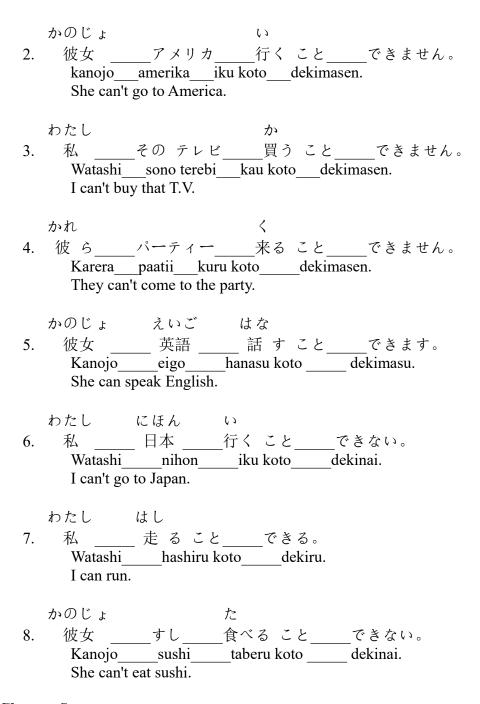
To use this structure, we simply append 「こと が できる」 to the dictionary form of our verb.

か
買う (to buy)
$$\rightarrow$$
 買う こと が できる (to be able to buy)
よ
読む (to read) \rightarrow 読む こと が できる (to be able to read)
はな
話 す (to speak) \rightarrow 話す こと が できる (to be able to speak)
く
来る (to come) \rightarrow 来る こと が できる (to be able to come)

Try a few on your own, just to get a feel for it (and also to get in a little bit of writing practice):

Let's take a look now at some example sentences. The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:





Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We can append 「こと が できる」 to the dictionary form of our verb to express the ability to do that verb
- 「できる」in 「こと が できる」is a Type II verb in its dictionary form, and can be conjugated to its negative form 「できません」or「できない」 to show the *in*ability to do that verb

Chapter 16: The potential form

In conjunction with what we studied in chapter 15, I think now would be a good time to introduce another way to express one's ability (or *inability*) to do something. This structure is a little more complicated, however, as it requires a little conjugation on our parts, but certainly nothing we shouldn't be able to handle.

First, let's look at our Type I verbs.

Type I verbs:

Conjugating to the potential form of our Type I verbs only requires two steps:

- 1. Change the last character of our verb to its λ -equivalent
- 2. Add 「る」

か

Let's look at one example together with the verb for 'to write;'「書く.」

We can see that the last character in $\lceil \frac{1}{4} \rceil$ is $\lceil \frac{1}{4} \rceil$. Looking at our Hiragana chart below, we can see that its $\frac{1}{4}$ -equivalent is $\lceil \frac{1}{4} \rceil$.

Hiragana										
	あ	а	<i>c y</i>	i	う	u	え	е	お	0
k	か	ka	き	ki	<	ku	け	ke	2	ko
S	さ	sa	L	shi	す	su	せ	se	そ	so
t	た	ta	ち	chi	つ	tsu	7	te	٤	to
n	な	na	に	ni	ぬ	nu	ね	ne	の	no
h	は	ha	V	hi	٤,	fu	^	he	ほ	ho
m	ま	ma	み	mi	む	mu	め	me	ŧ	mo
У	や	ya			ゆ	yu			よ	yo
r	6	ra	り	ri	る	ru	n	re	ろ	ro
W	わ	wa			う	u			を	wo
	h	n								

After we determine this, we simply change $\lceil \langle \rfloor$ to $\lceil l l l \rfloor$ and add $\lceil \delta, \rfloor$ and we end up with $\lceil 書 l l l l l$ the verb for 'to be able to write.'

Here are some more examples. Can you get the same result?

Dictionary form

Potential form

0

飲む (to drink)

飲める (to be able to drink)

さが

探 す (to search for)

探せる (to be able to search for)

あそ

遊 ぶ (to play)

遊べる (to be able to play)

はし

走る (to run)

走れる (to be able to run)

およ

泳ぐ (to swim)

泳げる (to be able to swim)

ょ

読む (to read)

読める (to be able to read)

Now try a few verbs yourself for practice:

<u>Di</u>	ctionary form	Potential form
1.	け 消す(to put out)	
2.	か 書く(to write)	
3.	し 死ぬ(to die)	
4.	か 噛む(to chew)	
5.	と 飛ぶ(to fly)	
6.	つく 作 る(to make)	
7.	か 買う(to buy)	

も 8. 持つ (to hold) _____

Let's check out a few example sentences. The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

わたし <u>か</u>

1. 私 は ひらがな を <u>書けます</u>。

Watashi ha hiragana wo kakemasu.

I can write Hiragana.

わたし かんじ か

2. 私 は 漢字 を 書けません。

Watashi ha kanji wo <u>kakemasen</u>.

I can't write Kanji.

わたし かねも <u>か</u>

3. 私 はお金持ちです。それを買えます。

Watashi ha okanemochi desu. Sore wo kaemasu.

I'm rich. I can buy that.

ح

4. ダチョウ は 飛べません。

Dachou ha tobemasen.

Ostriches cannot fly.

<u>つく</u>

5. 母 は おいしい ケーキ を $\frac{r}{r}$ れます。

Haha ha oishii keeki wo tsukuremasu.

Mom can make great cakes.

Now that Type I verbs are out of the way, let's take a look at some Type II verbs.

Type II verbs:

Type II verbs are a little bit trickier than Type I verbs. The conjugation is pretty straightforward and can also be done in just two steps, it's just that we have to preform some tongue-twisting acrobatics to actually *say* them.

To conjugate our Type II verbs we:

- 1. find the \sharp \sharp -stem of our verb
- 2. append「られる」

Let's look at some examples:

Dictionary form <u>\$\frac{1}{2}\tau_0\</u>

た → 食べられる (to be able to eat) 食べる (to eat) → 食べます おし 教 える (to teach) → 教えます 教えられる (to be able to teach) かんが 考 える (to think) → 考えます 考えられる (to be able to think) き 着る 着ます → 着られる (to be able to wear) (to wear)

Try a few yourself:

Now, let's take a look at some example sentences. The verbs will be highlighted in purple:

わたし <u>た</u>
1. 私 は すし を <u>食べられません</u>。
Watashi ha sushi wo <u>taberaremasen</u>.
I <u>can't eat</u> sushi.

かれ かんじ <u>おぼ</u>
2. 彼 はこの 漢字 を <u>覚 えられない</u>。
Kare ha kono kanji wo <u>oboerarenai</u>.
He <u>can't learn/remember</u> this Kanji.

わたし かのじょ すうがく <u>おし</u>
3. 私 は 彼女 に 数学 を <u>教 えられます</u>。
Watashi ha kanojo ni suugaku wo <u>oshieraremasu</u>.
I can teach her math.

わたし かのじょ

4. 私 は 彼女 にプレゼントを<u>あげられない</u>です。

Watashi ha kanojo ni purezento wo <u>agerarenai</u> desu.

I can't give her a present.

Finally, let's take a look at our friends the Type III verbs.

Type III verbs:

Our Type III verbs aren't conjugated like we might expect. We just have to commit them to memory.

Dictionary	<u>y form</u>	Potential form		
する	\rightarrow	でき 出来る (to be able to do)		
く 来る	\rightarrow	こ 来られる (to be able to come)		

Let's check out a few example sentences. The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

1. 私 は この ゲーム を 全 クリ できません!

Watashi ha kono geemu wo <u>zenkuri dekimasen!</u> I can't beat this game!

あした しごと <u>こ</u>

2. 明日 、 仕事 に 来られます か?

Ashita, shigoto ni koraremasu ka?

Can you come to work tomorrow?

3. 彼女 は 来られません。

Kanojo ha koraremasen.

She can't come.

4. 私 は 図書館 で 日本語 を <u>勉強</u> <u>できます</u>。

Watashi ha toshokan de nihongo wo benkyou dekimasu.

I can study Japanese at the library.

Conjugating to the negative form:

 level of politeness we want to use.

To conjugate our potential form verbs to their negative forms, we:

- 1. Drop the final 「る」
- 2. Add either「ません」or「ない」

Dictionary form	Potential form	ません-form/ない-form
た 食べる (to eat) →	食べられ る →	食べられません/食べられない (can't eat)
の 飲む (to drink) →	飲め る →	飲めません/飲めない (can't drink)
する (to do) →	できる →	できません/できない (unable)
く 来る (to come) →	こ 来られ る →	こ こ 来られません/来られない (can't come)
か 書く (to write) →	書け る →	書けません/書けない (can't write)

Now let's check out some practice problems.

Practice problems:

	わたし かんじ	か	
1.	私は、漢字を。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。。	(書く)	
	Watashi ha Kanji wo	•	
	I can write Kanji.		
			ž
2.	ステレオ は ない。この CD を		_。(聞く)
	Sutereo ha nai. Kono CD wo		
	There's no stereo. We can't listen to this CD.		
	わたし いそが まつ		ε ,
3.	私は忙しいです。祭りに		。 (行く)
	Watashi ha isogashii desu. Matsuri ni		
	I'm busy. I can't go to the festival.		

	かれ びょうき しごと	<
4.	彼 は 病気 で、 仕事 に	。 (来る)
	Kare ha byouki de, shigoto ni	
	He's sick and can't come to work.	
	たんご	おぼ
5.	この 単語 を	! (覚 える)
	Kono tango wo	
	I can't remember these vocabulary words!	
	,	
	かれ	<
6.		-
0.	Kare ha paatii ni	(kuru)
	He can come to the party.	(Kara)
	The can come to the party.	
	かのじょ	Ø
7.		
7.	彼女 は アルコール を Kanojo ha arukooru wo	。(KAS)
	She can't drink alcohol.	(nomu)
	She can't armik alcohor.	
	わたし とも	te
8.	私 の 友 だち は すし を	
0.	Watashi no tomodachi ha sushi wo	。 (は Neru)
	My friend can't eat sushi.	(taoeru)
	Triy Intolia call t cat susili.	
	かれ ご	はな
9.	-	
9.	彼 は フランス語 を Kare ha furansugo wo	。 〈 FIL タ /
	He can speak French.	(nanasu)
	The earl speak i tenen.	
	わたし	
10		(まっ)
10.	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	。(y ᢒ /
	Watashi ha sore wo I can do that.	(suru)
	i can uo mai.	

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- To make the potential form of our Type I verbs, we change the last character to its $\not\gtrsim$ equivalent, and add $\lceil \not \circlearrowleft \rfloor$
- To make the potential form of our Type II verbs, we drop the final $\lceil \delta \rfloor$ character and add $\lceil \delta \rceil$ at $\delta \rfloor$
- The potential form of「する」is「出来る」
- The potential form of「来る」is「来られる」
- We can also conjugate our potential form verbs to their negative forms

Chapter 17: Cause and effect with 「から」

Now, I'd like to introduce a very nice little grammar structure that will allow us to string our ideas together more fluidly.

The construction of our sentences in this chapter will look something like this:

With $\lceil \mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{h}, \rfloor$ we can take two ideas and link them together in a cause-and-effect-like fashion. We can think of $\lceil \mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{h} \rceil$ as being similar to 'because' or 'so' in English.

Unfortunately, the construction of these sentences can be a little tricky at first. As we can see from the 'construction' section above, if we want to follow a noun or a $\not a$ -adjective with $\lceil \not b , \not b , \rfloor$ we must also include $\lceil \not b , \not b , \rfloor$ However, when following an $\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \$ adjective or a verb (regardless of conjugation), we can simply append $\lceil \not b , \not b , \rfloor$ as is.

Let's read through some example sentences. Please note where $\lceil t \nmid b \mid \beta \rfloor$ and $\lceil b \mid \beta \rfloor$ are used.

- きょう <u>さむ</u> いえ で 1. 今日 は <u>寒</u> <u>い から</u> 家 を 出ない です。
 - Kyou ha <u>samui kara</u> ie wo denai desu. It's cold today, so I won't leave my house.

2. 朝 ごはん を <u>食べなかった から</u> おなか が すいた。 Asa gohan wo <u>tabenakatta kara</u> onaka ga suita.

I didn't eat breakfast, so I'm hungry.

3. この 道具 は <u>便利 だから</u> 高いです。

Kono dougu ha <u>benri dakara</u> takai desu. <u>Because</u> this tool is <u>useful</u>, it's expensive.

4. 私 は アメリカ 人 だから 日本 で 目立ちます。

Watashi ha amerika jin dakara nihon de medachimasu.

I'm American, so I stand out in Japan.



5. その テーマパーク は 楽 しそう だから 行ってみたい。

Sono teemapaaku ha tanoshisou dakara ittemitai.

That theme park looks fun, so I would like to go.

たかか

6. この ジーンズ は 高 い から 買わない。

Kono jiinzu ha takai kara kawanai.

These jeans are expensive, so I won't buy them.

みせ さかな <u>しんせん</u> おい

7. この 店 の 魚 は 新鮮 _だから 美味しい です。

Kono mise no sakana ha shinsen dakara oishii desu.

This store's fish is fresh, so it's good.

じかん はや たす

8. 時間 が ない から 早 く 助 けて ください!

Jikan ga nai kara hayaku tasukete kudasai!

There's no time, so please help me!

ð

9. この シャツ は <u>ピンク だから</u> 着ない。<u>*</u>¹¹

Kono shatsu ha pinku dakara kinai.

Because this shirt is pink, I won't wear it.

Some guy's pro tip #11:

It may seem a bit strange, but $\lceil \mathcal{E} \vee \mathcal{I} \rfloor$ is actually a noun in Japanese. So, to describe something as being pink, we need to connect $\lceil \mathcal{E} \vee \mathcal{I} \rfloor$ and the object with $\lceil \mathcal{O} . \rfloor$

わたし くるま す

Ex. 私 は その ピンク の 車 が 好き です。

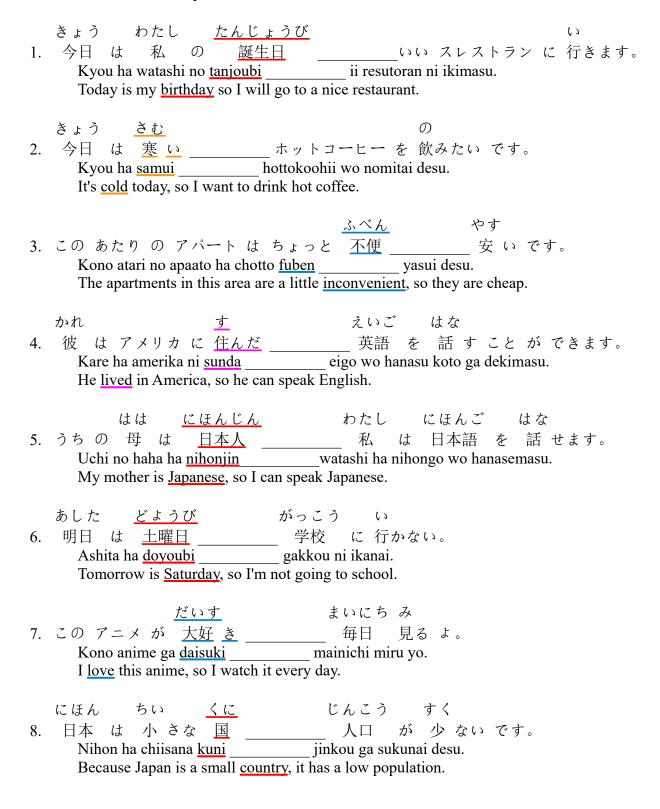
Watashi ha sono pinku no kuruma ga suki desu.

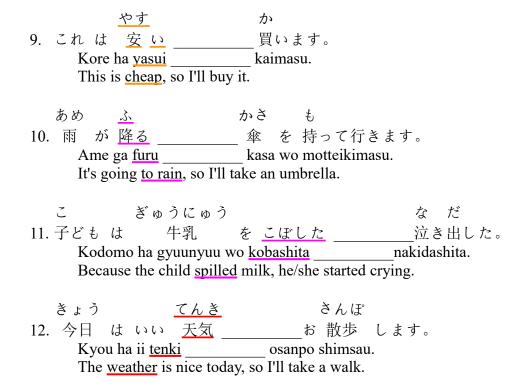
I like that pink car.

Now, let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks of the example sentences with either 「から	or	「だから:」	
---	----	--------	--





Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- 「から」 can be appended to nouns, verbs or adjectives to show cause and effect
- When using 「から」 with nouns or な-adjectives, we must also append 「だ」

Chapter 18: Cause and effect with 「ので」

This next structure is going to look pretty similar to what we saw in chapter 17. And you can actually think of them as pretty much meaning the same thing.

The most important thing to remember about the differences between the two, though, is that $\lceil \mathcal{O} \rceil$ is generally considered to be more polite than $\lceil \mathcal{D} \rceil \cdot \hat{\mathcal{O}} \cdot \hat{\mathcal{O}} \cdot \hat{\mathcal{O}}$ So, when making requests, it is better to use $\lceil \mathcal{O} \mathcal{T} \rceil$ instead.

Here's what are sentence structure will look like in this chapter:

Now, let's get into some example sentences.

Atsui node eakon wo tsukete kudasai.

It's hot, so could you please turn on the air conditioner?

2. 長崎 は 便利 なので とても 住みやすい です。

Nagasaki ha benri nanode totemo sumiyasui desu.

Nagasaki is a very convenient town, so it's a nice place to live.

3. 雨 が 降っている ので かさ を 持って行く つもり です。

Ame ga <u>futteiru node</u> kasa wo motteiku tsumori desu. Because it's raining, I'm planing to bring an umbrella.

4. 今日 は 土曜日 なので 学校 は 休 み です。

Kyou ha doyoubi nanode gakkou ha yasumi desu.

Because today is Saturday, there is no school.

にほんじん わたし にほん だいす

5. 日本人 は <u>しんせつ なので</u> 私 は 日本 が 大好 きです。 Nihon jin ha <u>shinsetsu nanode</u> watashi ha nihon ga daisuki desu. Because Japanese people are friendly, I love Japan.

かのじょ <u>た</u> い

6. 彼女 は すし を 食べた こと が ない ので かいてんずし に 行きたがる。<u>*¹²</u> Kanojo ha sushi wo <u>tabeta koto ga nai node</u> kaitenzushi ni ikitagaru.

She <u>has never eaten sushi before, so she wants to go to a sushi-go-round.</u>

かれ から た もの きら こくりょうり た

7. 彼 は 辛 い 食べ 物 が <u>嫌 い なので</u> かん 国 料理 を 食べない。<u>*¹³</u>
Kare ha karai tabemono ga <u>kirai nanode</u> kankoku ryouri wo tabenai.
He doesn't like spicy food, so he doesn't eat Korean food.

かれ せ たか

8. 彼 は 背 が <u>高 い ので</u> ダンクシュート を できる。 Kare ha se ga <u>takai node</u> dankushuuto wo dekiru. He's tall, so he can dunk (a basketball).

Some guy's pro tip #12:

かいてんずし

A 回転 寿司, or 'sushi-go-round' as it is often called in English, is definitely something you should check out if you ever make it out to Japan. Plates of sushi are placed on a conveyor belt that takes them around the restaurant, free to be grabbed and eaten by any of the customers. It's definitely a unique dining experience you aren't likely to find in the West. When you're finished eating, the waiter or waitress will come and count the number of plates you've taken to determine the total of your bill.

かいてんずし

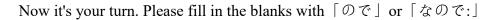
Some 回転 寿司 restaurants have a 100 Y per plate policy. Some, however, have plates of different color that cost different values. So, when you go, be sure to find out which type of restaurant you're in, so you don't inadvertently make a stack of 300-400 Y plates to the ceiling!

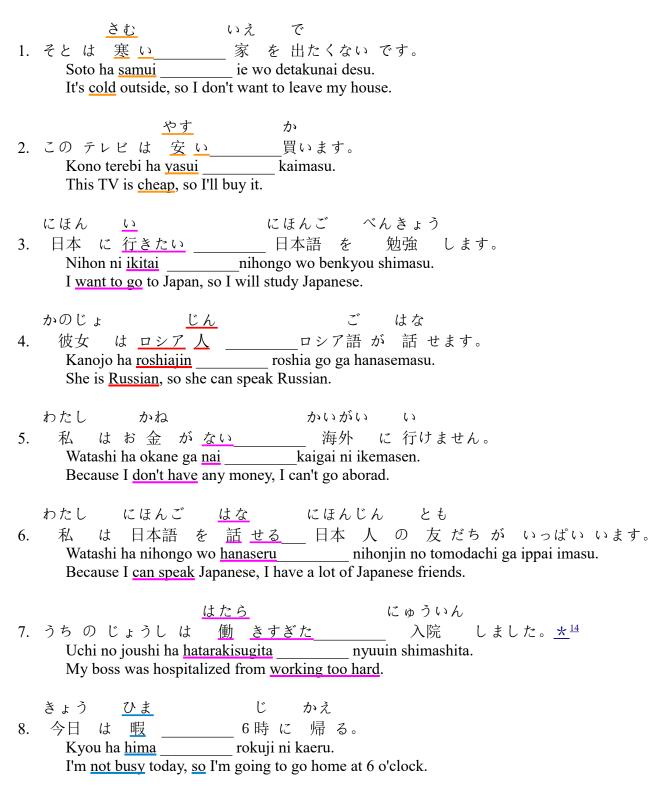
Some guy's pro tip #13:

きら

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:





ながさき <u>しず</u> す

9. 長崎 は <u>静</u> <u>か</u> _____ 好きです。

Nagasaki ha shizuka _____ suki desu.

Nagasaki is quiet, so I like it.

 びょういん
 す

 10. ここ は 病院
 タバコ を 吸えない。

Koko ha byouin tabako wo suenai.

This is a hospital, so I can't smoke.

Some guy's pro tip #14:

In Japan, working so hard that one becomes sick (or even dies!) is not as uncommon a thing as you かろうし

might think. In fact, they have a word for this: $<math>\lceil$ 過労死 \rceil (karoushi). If we look at each individual character that makes up this word, it's very easy to understand.

過- This character means 'over' or 'to exceed.'

労 - This character means 'work', 'labor,' or 'toil.'

死 - And this grimly character means death.

かろうし

So 「 過労死 ,」in English, basically translates to 'death from over-work.'

In fact, as a testament to the Japanese work-spirit, the word 'Karoshi' was added to the English dictionary in 2002! Check for yourself.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We use 「ので」 with nouns, verbs and adjectives to express cause and effect
- When appending 「ので」 to nouns or な-adjectives, we must also append 「な」
- 「ので」should be used over「から」when making requestsきら
- 「嫌い」is a な-adjective

We're now ready to make a huge leap in our Japanese language learning adventure by diving into the past... tense, that is.

As mentioned before, in Japanese there is a 'polite' way (formal) of speaking and a 'casual' (informal) way of speaking. How we conjugate our verbs depends on which form we want to use (polite, or casual).

First, we'll look at the formal form, and after becoming familiar with that, we'll take a look at the *little bit* more challenging informal form.

Since we already know how to conjugate our verbs to the \sharp \sharp -form, learning how to conjugate to the past tense in the formal form will be easy. It can be done in just two steps:

- 1. Isolate the verb's ます-stem
- 2. Append「ました」

Let's take a look at some examples.

Dictionary form		<u>ます-stem</u>		Past tense	
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読み ます	\rightarrow	読みました	(read)
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買い ます	\rightarrow	買いました	(bought)
ある 歩く (to walk)	\rightarrow	歩き ます	\rightarrow	歩きました	(walked)
はし 走る (to run)	\rightarrow	走り ます	\rightarrow	走りました	(ran)
と 飛ぶ (to fly)	\rightarrow	飛び ます	\rightarrow	飛びました	(flew)
はな 話 す (to speak)	\rightarrow	話し ます	\rightarrow	話しました	(spoke)
し 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow	死に ます	\rightarrow	死にました	(died)

You may have noticed that all of the above verbs are Type I verbs. I have some good news, Type II verbs are conjugated the *exact* same way.

Dictionary form		<u>ます-form</u>		Past tense
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べ ます	\rightarrow	食べました (ate)
かんが 考 える (to think)	\rightarrow	考え ます	\rightarrow	考えました (thought)
おし 教 える (to teach)	\rightarrow	教え ます	\rightarrow	教えました (taught)
あげる (to give)	\rightarrow	あげ ます	\rightarrow	あげました (gave)

Type III verbs even follow the same rules:

Dictionary form		<u>ます-form</u>		Past tense
する (to do)	\rightarrow	します	\rightarrow	しました (did)
く 来る (to come)	\rightarrow	き 来 ます	\rightarrow	き 来ました (came)

Now, let's look at some example sentences. The verbs are highlighted in <u>purple</u>.

せんげつ あめ ふ

3. 先月 雨 が <u>降りました</u>。

Sengetsu ame ga <u>furimashita</u>. It rained last month.

きょねん わたし いぬ <u>し</u>

4. 去年 、 私 の ペット の 犬 が 死にました。

Kyonen, watashi no petto no inu ga <u>shinimashita</u>. My pet dog died last year.

 $\frac{v}{5}$. ストア で ばんごはん を 買いました。

Sutoa de bangohan wo <u>kaimashita</u>. I bought dinner at the store.

かれき

6. 彼 も パーティー に 来ました か?

Kare mo paatii ni <u>kimashita</u> ka? Did he <u>come</u> to the party, too?

Some guy's pro tip #15:

In America, it still might be a little embarrassing to admit to reading comic books. Thanks to Hollywood, it is definitely becoming more 'socially acceptable,' but most adults would still rather not admit that they read 'Spider Man' or 'The Avengers' in their free time. However, in Japan, comic books, or manga(漫画), are an intricate part of the culture and are enjoyed by people of all ages. After you progress further in your Japanese study, I highly recommend finding a nice manga to read. It's a lot of fun, and it's great practice!

Let's check out a few practice problems.

Practice problems:

Conjugate the following verbs to their 'polite' past tense forms:

Dictionary form		<u>ます-form</u>		Past tense
た 1. 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow		→	
ょ 2. 読む (to read)	\rightarrow		→	
し 3. 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow		<u></u> →	

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- When conjugating to the formal past tense, all verb types are conjugated using the same method
- In formal situations, we should speak using the formal form
- To conjugate to the formal past tense, we simply append $\lceil \sharp \ \ to \ \text{the } \sharp \ \text{t-stem}$ of our verb

Hopefully now you are comfortable with conjugating verbs to their formal past tense forms (A.K.A. the 'polite form'). While what we learned in chapter 19 is an excellent start, it doesn't provide us with everything we need to know about the past tense. We only focused on conjugating verbs to their formal forms. Now, we are going to take a look at how to conjugate our verbs to the informal forms (A.K.A. the 'casual form'). $\star \frac{16}{}$

It is a little more complicated to conjugate verbs into the past using the informal form, but with enough practice, it will become quite natural. If you find that you can't keep the rules strait, don't worry. It will all come together in time. Persistence is the key!

Again, we have to separate our verbs into their respective types. As usual, let's begin by taking a look at our Type I verbs.

Below is a chart showing how we conjugate the final character of our Type I dictionary form verbs to get to the informal past tense form.

Verb ending	Informal form ending
う	o to
<u>3</u>	<u>った</u> った
<u> </u>	<u>った</u>
<u>.</u> ;;	<u>んだ</u>
<u>む</u>	<u>んだ</u>
<u>ぬ</u> ナ	<u>んだ</u>
<u>9</u> <	<u>した</u> いた
<u>`</u>	いだ

In the left column (Verb ending) is a collection of all of the possible characters that a Type I dictionary form verb can end with. The right column (Informal form ending) shows what that character changes into to get the informal past tense form.

Let's look at a few example conjugations:

Dictionary form		Informal past tense form
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買った (bought)
まわ 回る (to spin/rotate)	\rightarrow	回った (spun/rotated)

Let's try a few new ones on our own. We'll walk through the first one together. Let's conjugate 「 走る」 the verb for 'to run' into its informal past tense form.

はし

はし First, we begin with our verb in its dictionary form:「走る.」

We want to drop the final character. In this case 「る,」leaving us with 「走.」

When we consult the chart above, We can see that 「る」 must be replaced by 「った,」 giving us the はし result: 「走った」(ran).

Here are a few verbs you can try on your own:

<u>Dictionary form</u>	Informal past tense form
も 1. 持つ (to hold) →	
ある 2. 歩く (to walk) →	
わら 3. 笑 う (to laugh) →	

```
おど
4. 踊 る (to dance) → _______

し
5. 死ぬ (to die) → ______

6. 飛ぶ (to fly/jump) → ______

かせ
7. 稼ぐ (to earn income) → ______

かえ
8. 返 す (to give back) → ______
```

Some guy's pro tip #16:

Using the casual form is not at all necessary when speaking Japanese. In fact, if you're thinking that you can avoid using the casual form and stick strictly to the polite form, you are more than welcome to do that. There is nothing you can communicate in the casual form that you can't in the polite form. However, there are a few problems with this line of thinking. First, while it is possible for you, the speaker, to only use the polite form, it is impossible to avoid hearing or having someone use the casual form with you. So, having an understanding of the casual form is absolutely necessary. Secondly, while you can certainly express any thought you have in either form, sometimes it is necessary to use one form over the other depending on the *feeling* you want to convey. Finally, it sounds completely unnatural to always speak in the polite form, especially in casual situations; like when you're hanging out with you friends or speaking to someone who is socially 'lower' than you.

How did you do? If you find you can't remember which character changes into which ending, don't worry. I don't advise you to try and sit and memorize the above charts. In addition to not being very fun, it's also not a very effective study strategy. As you progress through this book and see and write more words in this form, you will naturally pick it up, seemingly with no effort at all. Of course, you are encouraged to consult the chart whenever you are unsure about something.

Let's look at a few example sentences so we can see these verbs in action. The verbs are highlighted in purple:

きのう <u>い</u>

1. A: 昨日 どこ に 行った?

Kinou doko ni itta?

Where did you go yesterday?

ともだち いえ <u>い</u>

B: 友達 の 家 に <u>行った</u>。

Tomodachi no ie ni itta.

I went to my friend's house.

こころにほんす

2. 子ども の 頃 日本 に 住んだ。

Kodomo no koro nihon ni sunda.

When I was a kid, I lived in Japan.

きょねん おとず

3. A: 去年 、 カナダ を <u>訪</u> <u>れた</u>。

Kyonen, canada wo <u>otozureta</u>.

I <u>visited</u> Canada last year.

B: どう でした か?

Dou deshita ka?

How was it?

A: すごく きれい だった よ。 *17

Sugoku kirei datta yo.

It was so pretty.

きのう かのじょ ほん

4. 昨日、 彼女 がこの 本 を読んだ。

Kinou, kanojo ga kono hon wo yonda.

She <u>read</u> this book yesterday.

かれ あたら くるま <u>か</u>

5. 彼 は 新 しい 車 を 買った。

Kare ha atarashii kuruma wo katta.

He bought a new car.

きのう よる <u>か</u>

6. 昨日 の 夜 に この レポート を 書いた。

Kinou no yoru ni kono repooto wo kaita.

I wrote this report last night.

Some guy's pro tip #17:

Now that we're familiar with how to conjugate our Type I verbs into the informal-past tense, let's take a look at our Type II verbs. Thankfully, Type II verbs are much easier than Type I verbs, so don't be scared.

First, let's take a look at some Type II verbs and their informal past tense forms.

Dictionary form		<u>Informal past tense</u>
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べた (ate)
な 投げる (to throw)	\rightarrow	投げた (threw)
おぼ 覚 える (to remember/learn)	\rightarrow	覚えた (remembered/learned)
み 見る (to see/watch)	\rightarrow	見た (saw/watched)
ふ 増える (to increase)	\rightarrow	増えた (increased)
で 出る (to leave/go out)	\rightarrow	出た (left/went out)

Do you notice the pattern? We simply drop the final character $\lceil \delta \rfloor$ and add $\lceil t \epsilon \rfloor$.

Since all of the Type II verbs have the same ending, we don't have to worry about remembering a variety of conjugations like with our Type I verbs.

Try some on your own:

Dictionary form	Informal past tense
あげる (to give)	→
でき 出来る (to be able to)	→



Let's check out some example sentences:

かのじょ かれ . 彼女 は 彼 に

1. 彼女 は 彼 に プレゼント を <u>あげた</u>。 Kanojo ha kare ni purezento wo <u>ageta</u>. She <u>gave</u> him a present.

きょう <u>た</u> 2. 今日 カレーを<u>食べた</u>。 Kyou karee wo <u>tabeta</u>. I <u>ate</u> curry today.

せんせい しごと <u>や</u>
3. みさ 先生 が 仕事 を <u>辞めた</u>。
Misa-sensei ga shigoto wo <u>yameta</u>.
Miss Misa <u>quit</u> her job.

4. ドア を 閉めた。 Doa wo shimeta. I shut the door.

5. 彼 は さやか さん に 日本語 を <u>教 えてもらった</u>。

Kare ha sayaka-san ni nihongo wo <u>oshietemoratta</u>. Sayaka <u>taught him</u> Japanese.

And, of course, we can't forget our friends the Type III verbs.

For the Type III verbs, we simply drop the $\lceil \sharp \dagger \rfloor$ ending and add $\lceil t \rfloor$.

Dictionary form	\rightarrow	<u>ます-form</u>	\rightarrow	Informal past tense
する	\rightarrow	します	\rightarrow	した
く 来る	\rightarrow	き 来 ます	\rightarrow	き 来た

Now, let's take a look at a couple quick example sentences.

1. 昨日 の 夜 、 しゅくだい を した。

Kinou no yoru, shukudai wo <u>shita</u>. Last night, I <u>did</u> my homework.

Now you should be a pro at conjugating verbs to the past tense. It's not so bad, right? But wait! Aren't we forgetting something? Ah! We almost forgot about the *negative* past tense. Don't worry, that's our next and final step.

In order to make it as simple as possible, I thought it would be best to keep negative and non-negative conjugations separate. The reason being is, if you are comfortable with conjugating verbs to the non-negative past tense, learning how to conjugate them to the negative past tense should be an easy step to take. We'll cover how to do it in the next chapter.

Chapter Summary:

Let's see what we learned in this chapter:

- Type I verbs are conjugated differently depending on which character they end with
- Type II verbs can be conjugated to the informal past by dropping the trailing $\lceil \delta \rfloor$ character and appending $\lceil t \xi \rfloor$
- We don't need to use the informal form to communicate, but it is important to learn
- The informal past tense form of 「です」is「だった」

Chapter 21: The formal negative past tense with 「~ません でした」

First, just like before, we're going to look at the formal (or polite) form of our verbs. As you may have already suspected, we'll start with our Type I verbs.

Let's look at some example conjugations:

Dictionary form		<u>ません-form</u>	Formal negative past tense
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買いません →	買いませんでした (didn't buy)
まわ 回る (to spin/rota	ute)→	回りません →	回りませんでした (didn't spin/rotate)
きけ 叫ぶ (to yell)	\rightarrow	叫びません →	叫びませんでした (didn't yell)
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読みません →	読みませんでした (didn't read)
し 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow	死にません →	死にませんでした (didn't die)
か 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	書きません →	書きませんでした (didn't write)
はな 話 す (to speak)	\rightarrow	話しません →	話しませんでした (didn't speak)
およ 泳 ぐ (to swim)	\rightarrow	泳ぎません →	泳ぎませんでした (didn't swim)

One the next page are some verbs to practice with:

Dictionary form		<u>ません-form</u>		Formal negative past tense
の 1. 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
ある 2. 歩く (to walk)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
3. いる (to exist)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
し 4. 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
さ 5. 指す (to point)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
ぬ 6. 脱ぐ (to take off)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

Here are some example conjugations:

Dictionary form		ません-form_	Formal negative past tense
た 食べる (to eat) -	\rightarrow	食べません →	食べませんでした (didn't eat)
み 見る (to see) -	\rightarrow	見ません →	見ませんでした (didn't see)
や 辞める (to quit) -	\rightarrow	辞めません →	辞めませんでした (didn't quit)
あげる (to give) -	\rightarrow	あげません →	あげせんでした (didn't give)
でき 出来る (to be able) -	\rightarrow	出来ません →	出来ませんでした (wasn't able to)

Let's try some more practice.

Conjugate the following verbs to their formal negative past tense.

Dictionary form	<u>ません-form</u>		Formal negative past tense
こた 1. 答 える (to answer)→		\rightarrow	
まちが 2. 間違 える (to err) →		\rightarrow	
み 3. 見せる (to show) →		\rightarrow	
み 4. 見つける (to find) →		\rightarrow	
ね 5. 寝る (to sleep) →		\rightarrow	
おし 6. 教 える (to teach) →		\rightarrow	
し 7. 閉める (to close) →		\rightarrow	

And finally, we have our Type III verbs. This time, they also follow the same rules as our Type I and Type II verbs.

Dictionary form	<u>ません-form</u>	Formal negative past tense
する (to do)	しません	しませんでした (didn't do)
く 来る (to come)	き 来ません	き 来ませんでした (didn't come)

Now that all of that stuff is out of the way, let's check out some example sentences using our new grammar structure. The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

かれ くつ ぬ

2. 彼 は 靴 を 脱ぎませんでした。

Kare ha kutsu wo <u>nugimasendeshita</u>. He <u>didn't take off</u> his shoes.

かのじょ でき

3. 彼女 は <u>出来ませんでした</u>。

Kanojo ha <u>dekimasendeshita</u>. She couldn<u>'t do</u> it.

わたし しゅくだい

4. 私 は 宿題 を しませんでした。

Watashi ha shukudai wo <u>shimasendeshita</u>. I <u>didn't do</u> my homework.

わたし あさ <u>た</u>

5. 私 は 朝 ごはん を 食べませんでした。

Watashi ha asagohan wo <u>tabemasendeshita</u>. I didn't eat breakfast.

わたし かれ み

6. 私 はこれを彼に見せませんでした。

Watashi ha kore wo kare ni misemasendeshita.

I didn't show this to him.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- When conjugating to the formal negative past tense, Type I, II and III verbs all use the same conjugation method
- To get the formal negative past tense of a verb, we simply append $\lceil \tau \mid \tau \rceil$ to the $\sharp \ \forall \lambda$ -form of that verb
- We use this form when wanting to speak politely

Chapter 22: Informal negative past tense with 「~なかった」

We're almost finished with our journey into the past... Excellent! If you've made it this far, pat yourself on the back. All that's left now is the informal conjugation to the negative past tense and we're done!

As per usual, let's start by taking a look at our Type I verbs. To conjugate them into the informal negative past tense, we are going to have to be able to conjugate our verbs to their & vi-forms. If you can do that, then this chapter will be a breeze. If you don't feel comfortable conjugating to the & vi-form quite yet, now would be a good time to do a quick review of chapter 12.

To conjugate our verbs, we are simply going to drop the final $\lceil \psi \rceil$ character from the $\langle \psi \rangle$ -form of the verb and add $\lceil \langle \psi \rangle > \langle \tau \rangle$. Let's take a look at the chart below to help get an idea of how it works:

Dictionary form		ない-form		Informal negative past tense
の 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow	飲まな い	\rightarrow	飲まなかった (didn't drink)
ある 歩く (to walk)	\rightarrow	歩かな い	\rightarrow	歩かなかった (didn't walk)
し 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow	死なな い	\rightarrow	死ななかった (didn't die)
およ 泳ぐ (to swim)	\rightarrow	泳がな₩	\rightarrow	泳がなかった (didn't swim)
はし 走る (to run)	\rightarrow	走らな い	\rightarrow	走らなかった (didn't run)
い 行く (to go)	\rightarrow	行かな い	\rightarrow	行かなかった (didn't go)

Let's look at some example sentences. The negative verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

きのう い

2. A: 昨日 ジム に 行った? <u>** ¹⁸</u>

Kinou jimu ni itta?

Did you go to the gym yesterday?

しり

B: ううん、<u>行かなかった</u> よ。

Uun, ikanakatta yo.

No, I didn't (go).

あし いた

がっこう ある

3. 足 が 痛 かった から 学校 に 歩 いて行かなかった。

Ashi ga itakatta kara gakkou ni aruiteikanakatta.

My feet hurt, so I didn't walk to school.

かのじょ うみ い

およ

4. 彼女 は 海 に 行った けど 泳 がなかった。

Kanojo ha umi ni itta kedo oyoganakatta.

She went to the beach, but she didn't go swimming.

Some guy's pro tip #18:

In informal sentences, it is not always necessary to use $\lceil h \rceil$ when asking a question. Just like in English, in Japanese, we can simply use a rising intonation to indicate to the listener that we are asking a question.

Let's practice a bit now by conjugating the following verbs from their dictionary form to their informal negative past tense forms.

Dictionary form		ない-form	<u>Inform</u>	al negative past tense
い 1. 行く (to go)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
か 2. 書く (to write)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
か 3. 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
し 4. 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
の 5. 乗る (to ride)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

Next, we'll take a look at our Type II verbs. The conjugation is the exact same as our Type I verbs, so this should help reinforce what we just studied.

Dictionary form		<u>ない-form</u>		Informal negative past tense
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べな い	\rightarrow	食べなかった (didn't eat)
な 投げる (to throw)	\rightarrow	投げな い	\rightarrow	投げなかった (didn't throw)
あげる (to give)	\rightarrow	あげな₩	\rightarrow	あげなかった (didn't give)
おぼ 覚 える (to remember)	\rightarrow	覚えな い	\rightarrow	覚えなかった (didn't remember)
み 見える (to appear)	\rightarrow	見えな い	\rightarrow	見えなかった (didn't appear)

Let's check out some example sentences. The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

ぼく えいが <u>み</u>

2. 僕 は その 映画 を <u>見なかった</u>。 Boku ha sono eiga wo <u>minakatta</u>. I <u>didn't see</u> that movie.

I was busy and I <u>didn't</u> have time to <u>eat</u> breakfast.

$$\frac{\Delta}{\Delta}$$
 4. 彼 は ボール を 投げなかった。

Kare ha booru wo nagenakatta.

He didn't throw the ball.

Now try a few verbs yourself. Conjugate the dictionary form of the verb to its \dot{a} \dot{a} -form, and then to its informal negative past form.

Dictionary form	ない-form	Informal negative past casual form
た 1. 食べる (to eat) →		
み 2. 見る (to see/watch)→		
で 3. 出る (to leave) →		
き 4. 下げる (to lower) →		
ふ 5. 増える (to increase)→		

All right, we're almost finished! All that's left now is our Type III verbs and we'll be completely through our crash course on the past tense.

Our Type III verbs work the same as our Type I and II verbs. We simply drop the $\lceil \wp \rceil$ from the $\wp \wp$ form and add $\lceil \wp \wp \wp \rangle$.

Dictionary form	<u>ない-form</u>	Informal negative past tense
する (to do)	しな い	しなかった (didn't do)
く 来る (to come)	こ 来な い	こ 来なかった (didn't come)

Let's look at a few example sentences. The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

1. A: 何で パーティー に 来なかった の? **19
Nande paatii ni konakatta no?
Why didn't you come to the party?

B: 忙しかった から。 Isogashikatta kara. I was busy.

2. 今日、テスト が ある けど 勉強 <u>しなかった</u>。どう しょう? Kyou, tesuto ga aru kedo benkyou <u>shinakatta</u>. Dou shiyou? There's a test today, but I <u>didn't study</u>. What should I do?

Some guy's pro tip # 19:

In casual situations, when the speaker asks a question, instead of ending their question with $\lceil \mathfrak{D}^{1}, \rfloor$ it is common to use $\lceil \mathfrak{O} \rfloor$ instead, with a rising intonation.

Now we're going to try and culminate everything you've learned about conjugating to the past tense with some practice problems. Feel free to look back and consult the material as you're working through the problems if you need a little help.

Practice problems:

Translate the following sentences into Japanese by filling in the blanks. Where you see '[casual]' at the end of the English sentence, please conjugate the given verb to its informal form. Where you see '[polite],' please conjugate the given verb to its formal form.

Ex: He didn't do the homework. [casual]

In the first example, please notice we need to use the particle $\lceil \underline{\varepsilon} \rfloor$ to link the object $\lceil \underline{\upsilon} \rfloor \leq \underline{\upsilon} \leq$

Ex: He went to the store. [polite]

In this example, please notice that we do **not** use 「を」 to link 「<u>みせ</u>」 with our verb 「<u>行きました</u>.」 Instead, we want to use 「<u>に</u>,」 since our verb describes a motion or direction the subject is heading.

1.	She didn't eat breakfast. [casual]	+2
	<u>あさごはん</u>	<u>た</u> 。(<u>食べる</u>)
2.	He studied math. [polite]	
	<u>すうがく</u>	。(<u>べんきょう する</u>)
3.	She came to school. [polite]	
	<u>がっこう</u>	<u>く</u> 。(<u>来る</u>)
4.	I didn't buy a present. [casual]	
	<u>プレゼント</u> _	<u>か</u> 。(<u>買う</u>)
5.	Did you go to the party? [polite]	
6.	I threw the ball. [casual]	
	<u>ボール</u>	<u>な</u> 。(<u>投げる</u>)
7.	I didn't throw the ball. [polite]	
	<u>ボール</u>	<u>な</u> 。(投げる)
8.	I ate breakfast. [polite]	
	<u>あさごはん</u>	<u>た</u> 。(<u>食べる</u>)
9.	I went to the gym. [casual]	
	<u> </u>	。(<u>行く</u>)

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- Instead of $\lceil \mathfrak{P}, \rfloor$ we can ask questions by using $\lceil \mathfrak{O} \rfloor$ or just a rising intonation
- It is important to have an understanding of how to use the formal and informal forms of verbs

Chapter 23: Gaining the ability to do something with 「~よう に なる」

Building off of what we learned about potential form verbs in chapter 16, we're now going to take a look at how to express *gaining* the ability to do something.

Given what we studied in chapter 16, we already know how to say something like 'I can speak Japanese.'

But how can we express *gaining* or *learning* the ability to speak Japanese, you ask? It's easy. We simply append $\begin{bmatrix} & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\$

ি α β is the Type II dictionary form verb for 'to become.' With this in mind, it's easy to see why this stucture takes on this meaning.

Let's look at some examples:

Dictionary form	Potential Dictionar	<u>y form</u>	<u>+よう に なる</u>
た 食べる (to eat)	食べられる	食べれるよ	うに なる (become able to eat)
はな 話 す (to talk)	話せる	話せる よう	に なる (become able to talk)
い 言う (to say)	言える	言える よう	に なる (become able to say)
よ 読む (to read)	読める	読める よう	に なる (become able to read)
する (to do)	でき 出来る	でき 出来る ょう	に なる (become able to do)

およ

Let's look at a quick example sentence:

わたし にほんご は

Ex. 私 は 日本語 を 話せる よう に なりました。

Watashi ha nihongo wo hanaseru you ni narimashita.

I learned how to speak Japanese.

This sentence can be literally translated as 'I became able to speak Japanese.' Of course, in English, we would most likely never actually say that. A more natural translation is 'I learned how to speak Japanese.'

Keeping this idea in mind, in the following examples, I am going to provide, what I consider to be, a more accurate/natural translation of the sentences, and **not** the literal translation. If it helps you to think of the sentences in the literal sense as '[subject] become able to [verb],' that's fine.

Let's check out a few more examples. The verbs will be highlighted in purple:

まいにちじて

じてんしゃの

1. 毎日 れんしゅう して 自転車 に 乗れる ょう に なりました。

Mainichi renshuu shite jitensha ni noreru you ni narimashita.

I practiced every day and learned how to ride a bike.

い ご はな

2. メキシコ に 行って スペイン語 を 話 せる よう に なりました。

Mekishiko ni itte supeingo wo hanseru you ni narimashita.

I went to Mexico and learned how to speak Spanish.

かれ おし でき

3. 彼 に 教 えてもらって <u>出来る よう に なりました。*20</u>

Kare ni oshietemoratte dekiru you ni narimashita.

He taught me, and now I am able to do it.

う おい <u>つく</u>

4. レッスン を 受けたら、美味しい ケーキ を 作 れる よう に なる よ。

Ressun wo uketara, oishii keeki wo tsukureru you ni naru yo.

If you take lessons, you'll be able to make delicious cakes.

わたし にほんご はな

5. 私 は 日本語 を 話 せる よう に なりたい です!

Watashi ha nihongo wo hanaseru you ni naritai desu!

I want to be able to speak Japanese!

むずか 難 しい! けっして ギター を 弾ける よう に ならない。 Muzukashii! Kesshite gitaa wo hikeru you ni naranai. This is hard! I'll never be able to play the guitar! Some guy's pro tip #20: でき Remember,「出来る」is the potential form of 「する.」 **Practice problems:** Now let's try some practice problems. Using the given verbs in parentheses, fill in the blanks with the verb in its potential form + 「よう に なる.」 わたし かんじ べんきょう ょ して マンガ を____。(読む) 1. は 漢字 を 勉強 Watashi ha kanji wo benkyou shite manga wo _____ (yomu). I studied Kanji and now I can read manga. いえいご かのじょ はな 彼女 は アメリカ に 行って 英語 を_____。 (話 す) Kanojo ha amerika ni itte eigo wo She went to America and now she can speak English. かれ まいにち 毎日 れんしゅう して_____。 (する) 3. 彼 は (suru). Kare ha mainichi renshuu shite He practiced everyday and now he can do it. おし な 4. コーチ に 教 えてもらって ボール を ______。(投げる) Coochi ni oshiete moratte, booru wo ______ (nageru). The coach taught me and now I can throw the ball. まいにち およ 毎日 れえんしゅう して_____。 Mainichi renshuu shite _____(oyogu) 毎日 (泳ぐ) 5.

I learned how to write Kanji.

I practiced every day and learned how to swim.

		かね		か	かいがい				<i>(</i>)
7.	お	金	を	借りて	海外	に		0	(行く)
		Okan	e w	o karite	kaigai ni		(iku)		
I borrowed some money, and now l						nov	I can afford to go abroad.		

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We can combine the potential dictionary form of a verb with $\lceil \sharp \ni \iota \wr \sharp \rbrace$ to express gaining the ability to do something
- 「なる」in「よう に なる」can be conjugated to its negative form「ならない」or「なりません」to express *not* gaining the ability to do something

Chapter 24: Wh-questions

In this chapter we're going to focus on asking our wh-questions; 'who,' 'what,' 'where,' 'when,' 'why,' and 'how.'

First, let's take a look at 'Who.'

<u>だれ</u> Who with 「誰 :」

だれ

The word for 'who' in Japanese is \lceil 誰. \rfloor And just like you would imagine, we use it to ask about the identity of someone.

Let's read a few example sentences so you can see it in action. The construction of our sentences will look something like this:

<u>かれ</u> だれ

1. <u>彼 は 誰 ですか</u>?

Kare ha dare desu ka?

Who's he?

2. <u>彼女 は</u> <u>誰</u> <u>ですか</u>?

Kanojo ha dare desu ka?

Who's she?

3. <u>あの</u> 人 <u>は</u> <u>誰</u> ですか?

Ano hito ha dare desu ka?

Who's that person?

4. <u>あなた の</u> <u>一番</u> <u>好きな はいゆうさん は 誰 です か</u>?

Anata no ichi ban suki na haiyuu san ha dare desu ka?

Who is your favorite actor?

だれ

Kore ha dare no kuruma desu ka?

Whose car is this?

Some guy's pro tip #21:

だれ

Who borrowed my pen?

When using \lceil if \nmid , \rfloor we're always going to couple it with $\lceil \not b^{\varsigma}$. \rfloor Remember, $\lceil \not b^{\varsigma} \rfloor$ is used when we want to show emphasis. When asking a 'who question', emphasis is always on the person being asked about.

That brings us to an end of our first wh-word. Next, let's take a look at the 'what' of the Japanese language.

<u>なに</u> What with 「何:」

なに

When we want to ask a 'what question,' we use $\lceil \neg \neg \rceil$ but we have to be a little careful. The Kanji $\lceil \neg \neg \rceil$ has two different readings. 'Nani' and 'nan.' How it is used in the question, determines which reading the speaker needs to use. When followed by $\lceil \neg \neg \neg \neg \rceil$ (like in the following three examples), we will read it as just 'nan.'

The construction of our sentences will look something like this:

When by itself, and not followed by 「です か,」 the character 「何」 is read as 「なに,」 but follows the same structure as above:

```
なに
1. これは何?
Kore ha nani?
What's this?

2. それは何?
Sore ha nani?
What's that?

3. あれは何?
Are ha nani?
What's that (over there)?
```

And just like in English, we can also use 「何」 to identify something.

かれ なに

1. 彼 は 何 を 食べました か?

Kare ha nani wo tabemashita ka?

What did he eat?

<u>なに</u> <u>ちゅうもん</u> 2. あなた は 何 を 注文 します か?

Anata ha nani wo chuumon shimasu ka? What are you going to order?

3. <u>あなた は 何 と 言いました か</u>?

Anata ha nan to iimashita ka?

What did you say?

なん And if we want to fallow 「何」 with a nave we want along 「の」 dimently often 「何

And if we want to follow 「何」 with a noun, we must place 「の」 directly after 「何 .」

<u>なん</u> <u>にほん</u> <u>き</u> 1. あなた は 何 _の ため に 日本 に 来ました か?

Anata ha nan no tame ni nihon ni kimashita ka? For what purpose did you come to Japan?

<u>かのじょ</u> <u>なん</u> <u>おんがく</u> <u>き</u> 2. 彼女 は 何 の 音楽 が 好き です か?

Kanojo ha nan no ongaku ga suki desu ka? What kind of music does she like?

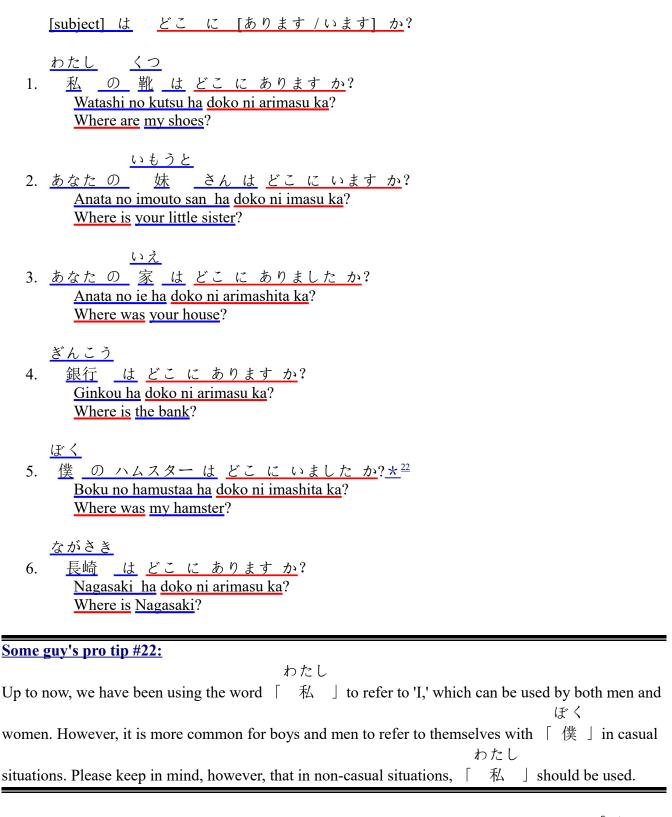
Now, let's take a look at the 'where' of the Japanese language with $[E \subset L]$

Where with 「どこ:」

To ask a 'where question' we need to use $\lceil \mathcal{E} \mathcal{I} . \rfloor$

First, we'll look at some examples asking about the location of different items or living things. In this case, we need to couple $\lceil \mathcal{E} \supset \rfloor$ with the particle $\lceil \mathcal{E} \supset \rfloor$

Our sentence construction will look like this:



Of course, we aren't just limited to asking about the location of the subject. We can also use $\lceil \mathcal{E} \rceil$ in conjunction with $\lceil \mathcal{E} \rceil$ to ask about where an *action* takes/took/will take place.

The construction of our sentences will look something like this:

[subject] は どこで [object] を [verb] か?

たち

1. <u>あなた</u> 達 <u>は どこ で バスケットボール を します か?</u>

Anatatachi ha doko de basuketto booru wo shimasu ka? Where do you guys play basketball?

かのじょ にほんご べんきょう

2. <u>彼女 は どこ で 日本語 を 勉強 します か?</u> Kanojo ha <u>doko de</u> nihongo wo benkyou shimasu ka?

Where does she study Japanese?

 み

 3. りょうこ さん は どこ で これ を 見つけました か?

Ryouko-san ha doko de kore wo mitsukemashita ka? Where did Ryouko find this?

<u>き</u> 4. <u>あなた は どこ で</u> その ニュース を 聞きました か?

Anata ha doko de sono nyuusu wo kikimashita ka? Where did you hear that news?

<u>かれ</u> <u>くるま</u> <u>か</u>

5. 彼 は どこ で その 車 を 買いました か?

Kare ha doko de sono kuruma wo kaimashita ka?

Where did he buy that car?

かれみ

6. あなた は どこ で 彼 を 見かけました か?

Anata ha doko de kare wo mikakemashita ka?

Where did you see him?

And if we want to ask about where someone/something is going, we can use $\lceil \mathcal{E} \supset \rfloor$ with the particle

「に」and the verb「行く.」

[subject] は どこ に 行く か?

1. あなた は どこ に 行きます か?

Anata ha doko ni ikimasu ka?

Where are you going?

When with 「いつ:」

When we want to make a 'when question,' we use $\lceil \iota \circ \supset \rfloor$.

Let's take a look at some example sentences.

First, we can use $\lceil \iota \circ \supset \rfloor$ to ask about when some event will take place.

Our sentences will look something like this:

4. パーティー は いつ です か?

When is the concert?

<u>Paatii ha itsu desu ka?</u> When is the party?

We can also ask about when an action takes place. This time our sentences structure will look like this:

Otousan ha itsu ie ni kaerimasu ka?

When is Dad coming home?

か

3. <u>あなた は いつ レポート を 書けます か?</u>

Anata ha itsu repooto wo kakemasu ka?

When can you write the report?

せんせい しごと や

4. みさ 先生 は いつ 仕事 を 辞めます か?

Misa sensei ha itsu shigoto wo yamemasu ka?

When is Ms. Misa going to quit her job?

にほん き

5. あなた は いつ 日本 に 来ます か?

Anata ha itsu nihon ni kimasu ka?

When are you coming to Japan?

Some guy's pro tip #23:

か

Remember, if we have a verb that expresses movement, such as 「帰る」 (to go home), we use $\lceil \mathcal{C} \rfloor$ to connect it with the location/destination.

And, of course, we can use [13] by itself to simply ask 'When?'

わたし
に

1. A: 私 は アメリカ に 行きます。

Watashi ha amerika ni ikimasu.

I'm going to America.

ほんとう

B: 本当 に?いつ? *24

Hontou ni? Itsu?

Really? When?

Some guy's pro tip #24:

ほんとう

「本当 に」 is a great expression to remember. When used as a question, like in the example, it takes on the meaning of 'Really?' or 'Is that true?' and often expresses surprise. But it can also be used to express a strong feeling when used in a statement.

Ex. この 本 は本当 に 面白い です よ。

Kono hon ha hontou ni omoshiroi desu yo.

This book is really good.

<u>なん</u> Why with 「何で:」

なん

When we want to ask a 'why question,' we can use 「何で.」

Our sentences will look something like this:

<u>なん</u> <u>「何で」[subject] は/が</u> [object] を/に/が [verb] か? $\underline{*}^{25}$

なん にほんご べんきょう

1. 何で あなたは 日本語 を 勉強 しますか?

Nande anata ha nihongo wo benkyou shimasu ka? Why do you study Japanese?

<u>なん</u> かれ えいが す

2. 何で彼はその映画が好きですか?

Nande kare ha sono eiga ga suki desu ka? Why does he like that movie?

3. 何で 彼女 は 今夜 の サッカーゲーム に 来ません か?
Nande kanojo ha konya no sakkaa geemu ni kimasen ka?
Why isn't she coming to the soccer game tonight?

<u>なん</u>

4. 何で あなた は そんな ひどい ことを 言いました か?

Nande anata ha sonna hidoi koto wo iimashta ka? Why did you say such a terrible thing?

<u>なん</u> かんこく い

5. 何であけみさんは 韓国 に 行きますか?

Nande Akemi-san ha kankoku ni ikimasu ka? Why is Akemi going to South Korea?

なんか

6. 何 で あなた は それ を 買いました か?

Nande anata ha sore wo kaimashita ka?

Why did you buy that?

なん

Of course, we can use always 「何で」by itself to simply ask 'Why?'

しごと や

A: 「 仕事 を 辞めます。 」

"Shigoto wo yamemasu."

"I'm going to quit my job."

Some guy's pro tip #25:

なん

It's important to always keep in mind that in Japanese, as I've mentioned before, it's not always necessary to include the subject or object of the sentence. For the sake of study, I have written the above examples to include all parts of the sentence, but we could have just as easily written a perfectly grammatically correct sentence while omitting the subject and/or the object, as long as they are understood by the listener through context.

にほんご

How with 「どう:」

As I'm sure you can imagine, there are a number of different ways to ask a 'how question' in Japanese. Instead of trying to cover every single possible construction, in this section, we're just going to focus on what I believe to be are the two most common and useful ways.

First, we'll take a look at using $\lceil \xi \rangle$ to simply ask for the listener's opinion. Our sentences will look like this:

```
[subject] は どうですか?

1. <u>あなたの ステーキ は どうですか?</u>

Anata no suteeki ha dou desu ka?

How's your steak?

てんき

2. 天気 は どうですか?

Tenki ha dou desu ka?

How's the weather?
```

えいが

3. 映画 <u>は</u> どう でした か?

Eiga ha dou deshita ka? How was the movie?

にほん

4. 日本 は どう です か?

Nihon ha dou desu ka? How do you like Japan?

やす

5. <u>あなた の 休 み は どう でした か</u>?

Anata no yasumi ha dou deshita ka?

How was your vacation?

Great! Nothing too tricky there. Now, let's take a look at our next construction.

This time, we're going to focus on using $\lceil \mathcal{E} \supset \rfloor$ to ask about the method or way of doing something with $\lceil \mathcal{E} \supset \mathcal{P} \supset \mathcal{T}. \rfloor$

にほん

6)

1. <u>日本</u> <u>まで</u> <u>どうやって</u> <u>行きます か</u>?

Nihon made douyatte ikimasu ka?

How are you going to get to Japan?

Ž

2. どうやって 来ました か?

Douyatte kimashita ka?

How did you get here?

つく

3. <u>この ケーキ を</u> <u>どうやって</u> 作 りました か?

Kono keeki wo douyatte tsukurimashita ka?

How did you make this cake?

4. どうやって すれば いい です か?

Douyatte sureba ii desu ka?

How should I do it?

5. どうやって この テレビ を つけます か?

Douyatte kono terebi wo tsukemasu ka?

How do I turn on this T.V.?

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

だれ

- 「誰」is used to ask 'how questions'
- 「何」 has two readings and is used to ask 'what questions'
- 「どこ」 is used to ask 'where questions'
- 「いつ」 is used to ask 'when questions' なん
- 「何で」is used to ask 'why questions'
- 「どう」 is used to ask 'how questions'ぼく わたし
- 「僕」is the casual form of 「私」 that is typically used by males

Chapter 25: Talking about past experiences with 「~こと が ある」

Here's another grammar structure that I really like. When I first started studying Japanese, this was one of the first 'advanced' structures I learned, and found that once I had a good command of how to use it, my Japanese jumped up to a whole new level very quickly. Not only is it *extremely* useful, but it's also very easy to use. And with our understanding of conjugating verbs to the past tense, you have all of the tools necessary to learn and use this structure.

To form this construction, all we're going to do is conjugate our verb to its casual past-tense form and append 「こと が ある.」 It will look something like this:

This expresses that some action has been done in the past, but exactly *when* it was done is not important.

Here's a quick example.

ょ

Grammatically speaking (for you English buffs out there), what we're doing is conjugating the verb to what in English is called the 'present perfect.' Of course, you're probably not so interested in that. But before we look at more examples, I'd like to explain *why* this structure takes on the meaning that it does.

The word $\lceil \mathcal{Z} \not\subseteq \rfloor$ means 'thing,' 'matter,' or 'fact.' And, as you already know, $\lceil \mathcal{Z} \not\subseteq \rfloor$ means 'to exist' (for inanimate objects). So, if we take a second to think about what we are literally saying with

something like 「読んだ こと が ある,」it will help you grasp the how and why of this structure.

It is also worth noting that when used as a stand-alone word, you will often see $\lceil 3 \rceil$ written in its Kanji form; 「事.」 When paired up with verbs, like in this structure, it is typically written out in Hiragana, however.

「読んだ こと が ある」 can be literally translated as 'The action of having been read in the past exists.' Though, nobody actually speaks like that (at least, nobody I know anyway...). But thinking about the structure this way can help cement its meaning in your mind. Of course, when spoken in Japanese, this a perfectly naturally sounding sentence.

Now that all that is out of the way, let's look at some example conjugations:

Dictionary form Informal past <u>~こと が ある</u> た 食べる (to eat) 食べた 食べた こと が ある (have eaten) み 見る (to watch/see) → 見た こと が ある (have watched/seen) 見た き 聞く (to hear/ask) 聞いた こと が ある (have heard/asked) 聞いた 61 行く (to go) 行った \rightarrow 行った こと が ある (have gone) < 来た 来る (to come) 来た こと が ある (have come) した した こと が ある (have done) する (to do) あげる (to give) あげた \rightarrow by $\frac{1}{2}$ by $\frac{1}{2}$

Practice a few yourself:

脱ぐ (to take off)

Dictionary form	Casual past tense		<u>~こと が ある</u>
よ 1. 読む(to read) →		\rightarrow	
はい 2. 入る (to enter) →		\rightarrow	
おど 3. 踊 る (to dance) →		\rightarrow	
つく 4. 作 る (to make) →		\rightarrow	
つか 5. 使 う (to use) →		\rightarrow	

脱いだ

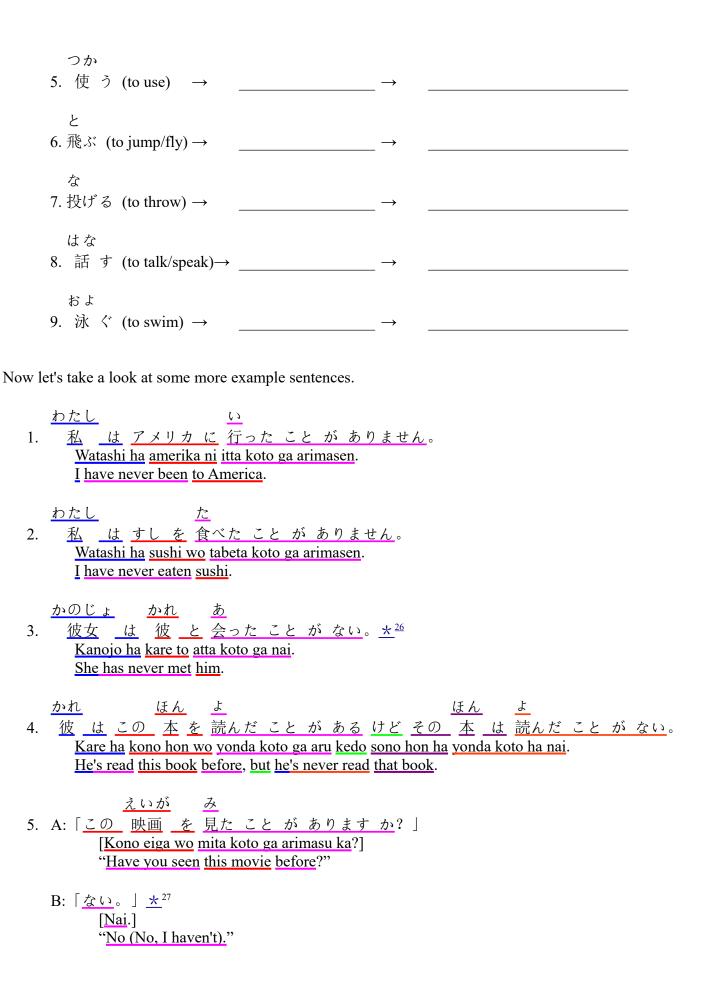
→ 脱いだ こと が ある (have taken off)

As you may have already suspected, we aren't limited to only using 「ある」in 「 \sim こと がある.」We have already seen that the negative form of 「ある」is 「ありません.」So, if we want to say that some action in the past does *not* exist (i.e. hasn't happened, or taken place), we can use 「こと がありません」.

For example:

Let's try conjugating the verbs from the list above to their negatives form with $\lceil \sim t$ こと が ありません. \rfloor The first one has been done for you as an example.

Dictionary form	Informal past	\sim こと が ありません
よ 読む (to read) →	<u>読んだ</u> →	読んだ こと が ありません
た 1. 食べる (to eat) →	<i>→</i>	
はい λ る (to enter) \rightarrow	<i>→</i>	
おど 3. 踊 る (to dance) →	<i>→</i>	
つく 4. 作 る (to make) →	<i>→</i>	



 $\frac{b}{b}$ $\frac{b}{b}$ $\frac{b}{b}$ $\frac{b}{b}$ $\frac{b}{b}$ $\frac{b}{b}$

6. <u>私 は 日本 に 住んでいる けど 日本 料理 を 作 った こと が あり</u>ません。

Watashi ha nihon ni sundeiru kedo nihon ryouri wo tsukutta koto ga arimasen.

I live in Japan, but I have never made Japanese food before.

かれ かのじょ はな

7. 彼 は 彼女 と 話したことがない。

Kare ha kanojo to hanashita koto ga nai.

He has never talked to her.

Some guy's pro tip #26:

In casual situations, instead of conjugating $\lceil \delta \delta \rfloor$ to its formal negative form $\lceil \delta \beta \sharp \forall \delta \rfloor$, we can conjugate it to $\lceil \delta \psi \rfloor$. Please also notice how we don't have to include $\lceil \delta \psi \rfloor$.

Some guy's pro tip #27:

When answering questions asked in the ことがある-form, it is normal in casual situations to simply answer with 「ある」or 「ない.」

きょく き A: 「この 曲 を聞いたことがある?」

Kono kyoku wo kiita koto ga aru?

Have you heard this song before?

B: 「うん、ある。」

"Un, aru."

"Yes, I have."

Or

「ううん、ない。」

"Uun, nai."

"No, I haven't."

Now let's try some practice problems. Translate the following sentences into Japanese using the polite form of the verbs:

Practice problems:

私 は_中国 に_行った こと があります____

5. She has come to my house before. (彼女 、 私 の 家 、来る)

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- $\lceil \sim t \mid c \mid b \mid b \mid d \mid$ is used to talk about the existence (or non-existence) of some action or event in the past-negative
- In casual situations, when answering questions asked in this form, simply saying 「ある」 for 'yes' or 「ない」 for 'no' is appropriate
- We do *not* couple this structure with the formal past tense form

Chapter 26: The volitional form

There are many occasions where we might want to suggest an idea or activity. You might say, "Hey, let's go grab a bite to eat," or "It's late, let's go home." In this case, we want to use the volitional form of our verbs.

Don't let the word 'volitional' scare you, though. Using the volitional form is easy, and can be made in one of two ways; with either the formal $\sharp \ \cup \ \sharp \ \eth$ -form or the informal $\ \sharp \ \eth$ -form.

First, because it's a little easier, we'll take a look at the formal form.

Dictionary form		<u>ます-form</u>		<u>ましょう-form</u>	
い 行く (to go)	\rightarrow	行き ます	\rightarrow	行きましょう (let's go)	
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買い ます	\rightarrow	買いましょう (let's buy)	
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べ ます	\rightarrow	食べましょう (let's eat)	
する (to eat)	\rightarrow	します	\rightarrow	しましょう (let's do)	

Try conjugating a few yourself:

Dictionary form	<u>ます-form</u>	<u>~ましょう</u>
はな 1. 話 す (to speak/talk)→		
み 2. 見る (to see/watch) →		•
3. する (to do) →	=	·
ある 4. 歩く (to walk) →	- -	·

つか 5. 使 う (to use) さけ 6. 叫 ぶ (to yell) はこ 7. 運 ぶ (to carry) → き 8. 着る (to wear) さ 9. 指す (to point)

Now let's take a look at some example conversations:

1. A: 「はら へった!」 [Hara hetta!] "I'm starving!"

B:「じゃ、ばんごはん を 食べましょう。」 $*^{28}$ [Jya, ban gohan wo tabemashou.] "Then, let's eat dinner."

きょう たんじょうび わたし 2.A: 「今日 は 私 \mathcal{O} 誕生日 です。 [Kyou ha watashi no tanjoubi desu.] "Today is my birthday."

0 B: 「そう です か? じゃ、ワイン を 飲みましょう。」 [Sou desu ka? Jya, wain wo nomimashou.] "Really? Then, <u>let's have</u> some wine."

じゅんび でき 3. A: 「 準備 が 出来た。| [Junbi ga dekita.] "I've finished preparing."

はじ B:「じゃ、 <u>始</u> <u>めましょう</u> か?」 [Jya, hajimemashou ka?] "Then, shall we begin?"

Some guy's pro tip #28:

When we want to give a suggestion in response to what someone said, it's common to begin our sentence with 「じゃ.」 It can be thought of as loosely translating to 'Well, how about...?' or 'Then, ...'

Now, let's take a look at using the informal <math>-form. It's a little bit more complicated to construct than its formal counterpart, but not by much.

To begin, let's take a look at our Type I verbs.

We can conjugate our Type I verbs to their volitional forms in just two steps:

- 1. Change the verb's trailing character to its お-equivalent
- 2. Add 「う」

Let's try a couple examples together. We can use the Hiragana chart below for reference.

Hiragana										
	あ	а	c J	i	う	u	え	е	お	0
k	か	ka	き	ki	<	ku	け	ke	2	ko
S	3	sa	L	shi	す	su	せ	se	そ	so
t	た	ta	ち	chi	つ	tsu	て	te	と	to
n	な	na	に	ni	ぬ	nu	ね	ne	の	no
h	は	ha	V	hi	3,	fu	^	he	ほ	ho
m	ま	ma	み	mi	む	mu	め	me	ŧ	mo
у	や	ya			ゆ	yu			よ	yo
r	5	ra	ŋ	ri	る	ru	n	re	ろ	ro
W	わ	wa			う	u			を	wo
	h	n								

ょ

First, let's look at the verb for 'to read;'「読む.」

We can see that its final character is $\lceil t \cdot . \rfloor$ And when we consult our Hiragana chart, we can see that the t = 0 -equivalent of $\lceil t \cdot . \rfloor$ is $\lceil t \cdot . \rfloor$ After determining this, we simply replace $\lceil t \cdot . \rfloor$ with $\lceil t \cdot . \rfloor$ and

append 「う,」and we get 「読もう;」 "Let's read."

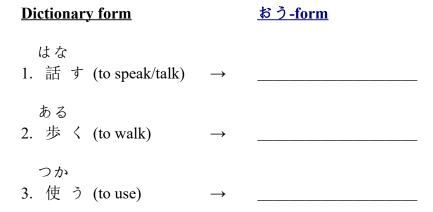
はし

Let's try another one. This time let's take a look at the verb for 'to run;' 「 走 る.」

It's final character is 「る,」 and the お-equivalent of 「る」 is 「ろ.」 So we change 「る」 to はし

「ろ」and append「う,」and we get「 走 ろう;」 "Let's run."

Try a few yourself:



さけ

はこ

ž

Now, let's check out some example sentences:

あした うみ い

1. 明日、海に行こう。

Ashita, umi ni ikou.

Let's go to the beach tomorrow.

じかん はし

- 2. 時間 がない。走 <u>ろう!</u> Jikan ga nai. <u>Hashirou!</u> There's no time. Let's run!
 - だい たか <u>ある</u>
- 3. タクシー 代 は 高いよ。 <u>歩 こう</u>。 Takushiidai ha takai yo. <u>Arukou</u>. Cab fare is expensive. <u>Let's walk</u>.

かのじょ はな

4. 彼女 と <u>話</u> そう。

Kanojo to hanasou.

Let's talk with her.

にほんご てがみ か

5. 日本語 で 手紙 を <u>書こう</u>。 Nihongo de tegami wo <u>kakou</u>. <u>Let's write</u> a letter in Japanese.

Now, onto our Type II verbs.

To conjugate our Type II verbs, we simply append $\lceil \sharp \circlearrowleft \rfloor$ to our verb's $\sharp \circlearrowleft$ -stem.

た

Let's check out a quick example with the verb for 'to eat;'「食べる.」

As we already know, the ます-stem of「食べる」is「食べ.」After determining this, we simply append「よう」to end up with「食べよう;」"Let's eat."

Try a few on your own:

Dictionary form		<u>ます-form</u>		Volitional form
かんが 1. 考 える (to think)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
おし 2. 教 える (to teach)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
み 3. 見る (to watch)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
こた 4. 答 える (to answer)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
に 5. 逃げる (to run away)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

Let's read a few example sentences:

And finally, we have our Type III verbs.

As you might expect, our Type III verbs behave a little differently, so we'll just have to commit their z irregular conjugations to memory. Please notice how 「来」in 「来よう」is read as 「こ.」

Dictionary form

Volitional form

する (to do)
$$\rightarrow$$
 しょう (let's do) く こ来る (to come) \rightarrow 来よう

Let's look at a couple example sentences.

Some guy's pro tip #29:

This sentence might seem a little strange to you. The reason is, just like in English, in Japanese there is no "Let's come." $\lceil \# \sharp \rceil$ is used in conjunction with other verbs.

In the given example sentence, it is used in conjunction with the て-form of the verb for 'to take つ along;'「連れる,」 and is used to express the direction or movement of some action.

Now, let's bring it all together and try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks with the given verbs in their volitional forms. Where you see a sentence marked with 'polite,' use the formal form. Where you see a sentenced marked with 'casual,' use the informal form.

1.	Let's eat sushi! (casual) すし を! (食べる) Sushi wo!
2.	Let's go. (polite)
3.	Let's buy that. (casual)
	それ を。(買う)
	Sore wo (kau)
4.	Let's watch that movie. (casual) えいが その 映画 を。(見る) Sono eiga wo (miru)
5	Let's eat sushi. (polite)
٥.	te
	すし を。(食べる)
	Sushi wo (taberu)
6.	I'm sleepy! Let's drink some coffee. (casual)
	ねむの場合は、
	眠 い! コーヒー を。(飲む) Nemui! Coohii wo (nomu)
	Nemur: Coom wo (nomu)
7.	Let's buy a new car. (polite)
	あたら くるま か
	新 しい 車 を。(買う
	Atarashii kuruma wo (kau)

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- The volitional form has a formal and informal form
- We can use either form to make a suggestion, or invite someone to do something
- In response to a statement, it is common to use 「じゃ」 before giving our suggestion or idea

Chapter 27: Giving and receiving with 「あげる,」 「もらう」and「くれる」

Let's start with 「あげる.」

Although $\lceil b \ b' \ b \rceil$ has numerous uses (some of which are explored later in the book), one primary purpose is to simply describe the act of giving (perhaps a gift). Up to now, sentences using $\lceil b \ b' \rceil$ by any be the most complicated we've seen, but there's nothing new, so don't let yourself be overwhelmed. Here is the structure we will be using.

As you can see, we have three of our particles; 「は,」「に」 and 「を.」

 $\lceil \mathcal{U} \rfloor$ marks the doer of the action, $\lceil \mathcal{U} \rfloor$ marks the recipient of that action, and $\lceil \mathcal{E} \rfloor$ is the object that was given by the subject.

わたし

We have to be careful, though, because the recipient of the action can *never* be 「 私 .」 If we are given something by someone, instead of 「あげる」 we must use 「〈れる.」 Don't worry about the details for now, just keep in mind that 「私」 can <u>never</u> be the recipient in a sentence using 「あげる.」

Possible sentences will look something like this:

Subject		Recipient		<u>Object</u>		<u>Verb</u>
<u>私</u> 彼/彼女 あなた	<u>は</u>	私 <u>彼/彼女</u> あなた	<u>12</u>	[object]	<u>*</u>	[あげる]

わたしわたし

Let's look at some example sentences using different subjects and recipients.

Watashi ha kare ni purezento wo agemashita.

I gave a present to him.

<u>かのじょ</u> <u>かあ</u> <u>ほん</u>

2. <u>さやか は</u> 彼女 <u>の お 母 さん に 本 を あげました</u>。

Sayaka ha kanojo no okaasan ni hon wo agemashita. Sayaka gave a book to her mother.

かのじょなに

3. <u>あなた は 彼女 に 何 を あげました か</u>?

Anata ha kanojo ni nani wo agemashita ka?

What did you give to her?

かのじょかれ

4. 彼女 は あなた に 彼 の テレビ を あげます。

Kanojo ha anata ni kare no terebi wo agemasu.

She'll give his T.V. to you.

<u>わたし</u> <u>かれ</u>

5. <u>私 たち は 彼 に チョコレート を あげました。*30</u>

Watashi tachi ha kare ni chocoreeto wo agemashita.

We gave chocolate to him.

かれ

6. 彼ら は 彼 に バスケットボール を あげます。

Karera ha kare ni basukettobooru wo agemasu.

They will give a basketball to him.

<u>わたし</u> せんせい

7. <u>私 は 先生 にこれを</u>さしあげます。<u>*</u>³¹

Watashi ha sensei ni kore wo sashiagemasu.

I will give this to the teacher.

Some guy's pro tip #30:

わたし

In this sentence, 「私たり」refers to the 'us' in "let's."

Some guy's pro tip #31:

Try some practice problems on your own.

Practice problems I:

Translate the following sentences into Japanese (you can use either the polite or casual form of $\lceil b \ \rangle$ $\lceil b \ \rangle$ when answering):

1. I gave a cellphone to him. (hint: cellphone = けいたいでんわ)

5. They gave a cookie to him. (hint: cookie =
$$7 y + -$$
)

______c

Next on our menu is $\lceil b \beta \rceil$, the verb for 'to receive.'

Hopefully you didn't find the sentence structure of $\lceil b \not \mid \ \$ to be too confusing or difficult, because the sentence structure of $\lceil b \not \mid \ \$ is almost the exact same, but with a *little* twist (but still a very important one).

Subject/Recipient	Giver	<u>Object</u>	Verb
<u>私</u> 彼/彼女 <u>あなた</u> 彼ら	私 彼/彼女 <u>に/から</u> <u>あなた</u> 彼ら	[object] &	[もらう]

わたし

Please notice that the 'Giver' of the object cannot be $\lceil \mod \rceil$. Although it might be tempting, we cannot say something like:

かれ わたし けいたいでんわ

X 彼 は 私 に 携帯電話 を もらいました。

Kare ha watashi ni keitaidenwa wo moraimashita.

わたし

If the giver is 「 私 ,」we need to use 「あげる.」

わたし かれ けいたいでんわ OK 私 は 彼 に 携帯電話 を あげました。

Watashi ha kare ni keitaidenwa wo agemashita.

I gave him the cellphone.

Let's take a look at some example sentences to give you an idea of how it works:

わたし にい

1. <u>私 は お 兄 ちゃん から/に この Tシャツ を もらいました。</u>
Watashi ha oniichan kara/ni kono T-shatsu wo moriaimashita.
I got this t-shirt from my older brother.

かれ

2. 彼 はいずみ さん から/に CD を もらった。
Kare ha Izumi-san kara/ni CD wo moratta.
He got a CD from Izumi.

<u>かのじょ</u> せんせい <u>いただ</u>

3. 彼女 は 先生 から/に ギフト を 頂 きました。*³²

Kanojo ha sensei kara/ni gifuto wo itadakimashita.

She received a gift from the teacher.

<u> かあ</u> とう

4. お 母 さん は お 父 さん から/に きれい な ゆびわ を もらいました。 Okaasan ha otousan kara/ni kirei na yubiwa wo moraimashita. Mom got a beautiful ring from Dad.

Some guy's pro tip #32:	
The polite form of 「もらう」is 「 項 く. 」If you are somewhat familiar with Japanes	se culture, いただ
you'll probably already know that before eating a meal, Japanese people almost always say ます! 」This can be translated as 'I will humbly receive,' and is similar to how some peop before eating. So, keeping in line with this thinking, when you or someone receives someth someone in a higher social position; a boss, teacher, a friend's mother, etc instead of 「もいただ better to use 「頂く.」With social equals, however, 「もらう」 is fine.	le say grace ing from
Practice problems II:	
Using the polite form of 「もらう,」 let's try translating the following sentences into Japan	iese.
1. She got a cellphone from him. (hint: cellphone = けいたいでんわ)	
かね 2. <u>She will get money from her.</u> (hint: money = お 金)	
3. He got a present from them. (hint: present = プ レゼント)	
くるま 4. They got a car from him. (hint: car = 車)	
5. He got a cookie from them. (hint: cookie = クッキー)	

- る,」because like「あげる,」「くれる」also means 'to give,' but with a slight twist. We use「くれわたし
- 3 \rfloor when someone gives something to us ($\lceil \times \mathbb{A} \rfloor$) and can be more appropriately translated as 'give me.'

We have to be a little careful, though, because we also use $\lceil \langle h \rangle \rceil$ when a member of our family receives something from someone outside of our family, or when a co-worker receives something from someone outside of the company (e.g., a business partner).

For example, if we wanted to say 'He gave me a pen.' We might want to say:

Unfortunately, we'd be wrong.

Because the receiver of the action is $\lceil \Lambda, \rfloor$ we have to use $\lceil \langle \Lambda \rangle$ instead of $\lceil \delta \rangle$. The correct sentence looks like this.

Here is the sentence structure we'll be using: $\pm \frac{33}{2}$

<u>Subject</u>	Receiver	<u>(</u>	<u>Object</u>	<u>Verb</u>
<u>彼/彼女</u> <u>あなた</u> <u>は</u> 彼ら	(私 <u>family me</u> <u>co-worker</u>		[object] <u>&</u>	「 <u>くれる</u> 」

Some guy's pro tip #33:

Let's check out some example sentences:

 $\frac{n \, t \, 0}{2}$ $\frac{c \, h \, t \, 0}{2}$

Ben san ha (watashi ni) tanjoubi purezento wo kuremashita.

Ben gave a birthday present to me.

かれ いもうと

3. 彼 は 妹 に この ジャケット を くれました。*34

Kare ha imouto ni kono jyaketto wo kuremashita.

He gave a jacket to my little sister.

せんせい わたし

4. 先生 <u>は (私 に) その ペンケース を</u> くださいました。 x^{35}

Sensei ha (watashi ni) sono penkeesu wo kudasaimashita.

My teacher gave that pen case to me.

かのじょ わたし べんとう

5. <u>彼女 は (私 に) お 弁当 を くれまし</u>た。*³⁶

Kanojo ha (watashi ni) obentou wo kuremashita.

She gave a bentou to me.

かれ いもうと

6. 彼 は 妹 に ゲームを くれました。

Kare ha imouto ni geemu wo kuremashita.

He gave a game to my little sister.

<u> どうりょう</u>

7. <u>山本 さん は うち の</u> 同僚 <u>に</u> <u>この ペン を</u> くれました。

Yamamoto-san ha uchi no douryou ni kono pen wo kuremashita.

Mr. Yamamoto gave this pen to my co-worker.

Some guy's pro tip #34:

It's not always the case that the receiver of the object will be 「私.」 When someone outside of your family gives something to someone in your family (such as your little sister), we also use 「くれる.」

Some guy's pro tip #35:

The polite form of $\lceil \langle n \rangle$ is $\lceil \langle n \rangle \rangle$. When the giver of an object is in a socially higher position than you (and not a family member), it is more polite to use $\lceil \langle n \rangle \rangle$.

Some			

「お 弁当 」 refers to a pre-made lunch. Often made to be as aesthetically pleasing as they are tasty. If you've never seen an authentic Japanese bentou before, do yourself a favor and try a Google

Image search. The honorific 「お」 is often placed at the beginning of the word 「 弁当 ..」

It is also worth noting that when asking someone a question, we use $[\langle h \delta \rangle]$

Ex. 誰 が あなた に それ を くれました か?

Dare ga anata ni sore wo kuremashita ka? Who gave that to you?

Practice problems III:

Using the polite form of $\lceil \langle h \delta, \rfloor$ let's try translating the following sentences into Japanese.

1. She gave a cellphone to me. (hint: cellphone = けいたいでんわ)

2. She will give money to me. (hint: money = お 金)

3. He gave a present to Dad. (hint: present = プレゼント, Dad = お 父 さん)

4. They gave a car to my little sister. (hint: car =

5. They gave a cookie to me. (hint: cookie = クッキー)
Now to put it all together and truly test our understanding of $\lceil b \beta \rceil$, $\lceil b \beta \rceil$, and $\lceil \delta \rceil$ we're going to look at one more set of practice exercises.
Practice problems IV:
Fill in the blanks with the appropriate particles among: 「に,」「を,」「は,」or「から.」
わたし わたし かね 1. 私 の おばさん 私 お 金くれました。
Watashi no obasan watashi okane doru kuremashita. My aunt gave me some money.
わたし 2. あかせさん 私おみやげくださいました。 <u>*</u> 37
Akase-san watashi omiyage kudasaimashita. Mr. Akase gave me a souvenir.
わたし わたし とも 3. 私 私 の 友 だち プレゼント あげました。
Watashi watashi no tomodachi purezento agemashita. I gave a present to my friend.
かれ わたし 4. 彼ら 私この CD くれました。
Karera watashi kono CD kuremashita. They gave me this CD.
わたし かのじょ 5. 私 彼女 おみやげ もらいました。
Watashi kanojo omiyage moraimashita. I got a souvenir from her.
6. なるみさん あけみちゃん チャンディー あげました。
Narumi-san akemi-chan kyandii agemashita. Narumi gave Akemi some candy.

	わたしかれ
7.	私 彼 おみやげ もらいました。
	Watashi kare omiyage moraimashita. I got a souvenir from him.
	わたし かれ 私 たち 彼 チョコレート あげました。
	Watashi tachi kare chokoreeto agemashita. We gave him chocolate.
9.	ベンさん たんじょうび プレゼント くれました。
	Ben san tanjoubi purezento kuremashita. Ben gave me a birthday present.
	かれ 彼 みささん CD もらった。
	Kare misa-san CD moratta. He got a CD from Misa.
11.	わたし りょうこさん 私この ズボン くれました。
	Ryouko-san watashi kono zubon kuremashita. Ryouko gave me these pants.
	せんせい なに 先生 あなた 何 くださいました か?
	Sensei anata nani kudasaimashita ka? What did the teacher give you?
13.	わたし かのじょ かあ 私 彼女 の お 母 さん これ さしあげます。
	Watashi kanojo no okaasan kore sashiagemasu. I will give her mother a present.

Some guy's pro tip #37:

In Japan, it is customary (almost to the point of being mandatory) to bring back a small gift for your friends and co-workers whenever you come back from a trip. This gift is known as an お土産 (omiyage) and usually comes in the form of food; cookies, candy, or some delicacy from the area you visited. So, if you are planning on visiting someone in Japan, you can be sure that they'll be expecting a nice (tasty) お土産 from you.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We can use 「あげる」 when the receiver is not 「 私 ,」 a family member or a co-worker
- When using 「もらう,」 the giver is marked with either 「に」 or 「から」 and the receiver is marked with 「は」

- We use 「くれる」 when 「 私 」 is the receiver
- We also use 「くれる」 when the receiver is someone in our family who receives something from someone outside of our family, or a co-worker who receives something from someone outside of our company
- The polite form of [あげる] is [さしあげる]
- The polite form of「くれる」is「くださる」

• The polite form of 「もらう」is 「 頂 く」

Chapter 28: Giving advice and warnings with 「ほうがいい」

Since we are already familiar with how to conjugate verbs to their informal-past tense and ない-forms, making use of this next grammar structure should be no problem at all.

We can use this structure when we want to give someone some advice or a warning: "You should bring your umbrella. It might rain," or "You shouldn't wear that to your interview. It's not professional."

The construction looks like this:

As you can see from the construction given above, all we have to do is append $\lceil \mathcal{L} \supset \mathcal{L} \rceil$ to either the \mathcal{L} or informal-past tense form of our verb.

Here are a few examples with 「ない ほう が いい:」

Dictionary form ない-form + ほう が いい た 食べない ほう が いい (should not eat) 食べる (to eat) 63 61 行く (to go) 行かない ほう が いい (should not go) 00飲む (to drink) 飲まない ほう が いい (should not drink) な 泣かない ほう が いい (should not cry) 泣く (to cry)

And here are a few examples with 「ほう が いい:」

$\frac{Dictionary form}{c}$ $\frac{Past tense form + ほう がいい}{c}$ た 食べる (to eat) $\frac{C}{c}$ 食べた ほう がいい (should eat) い 行く (to go) $\frac{C}{c}$ 行った ほう がいい (should go) の 飲む (to drink) $\frac{C}{c}$ 飲んだ ほう がいい (should drink)

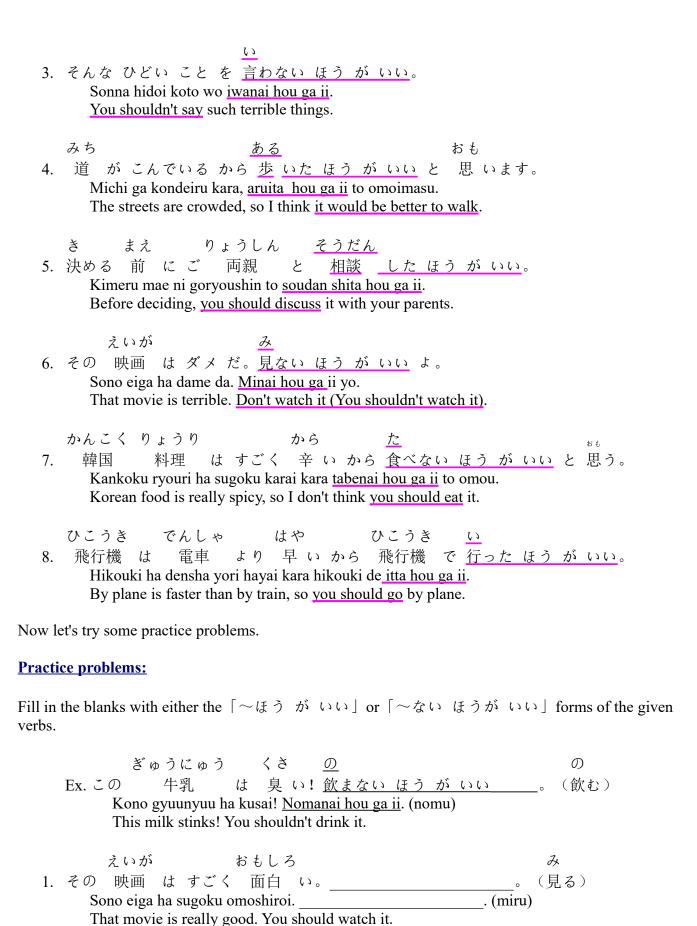
Try some on your own.

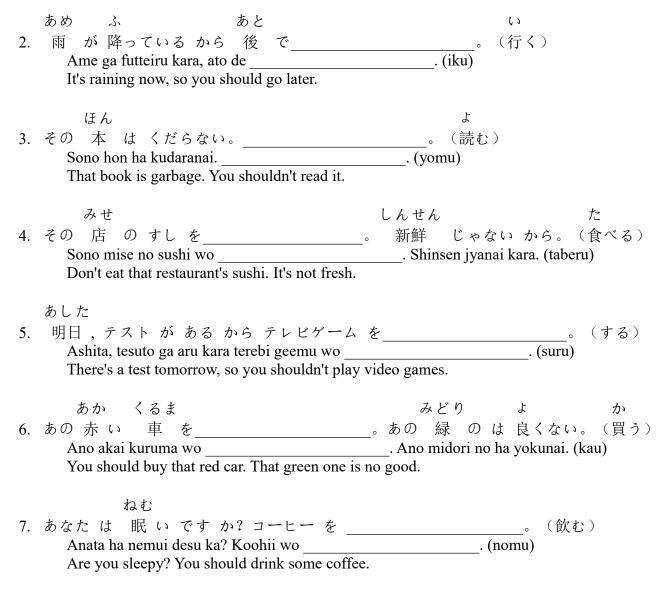
Fill in the blanks with the 「~ほう が いい」 and 「~ない ほう が いい」 forms of the verbs:

Dictionary form		ない-form+ほう が いい	-	た-form + ほう が いい
ある 1. 歩く (to walk)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
2. する (to do)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
く 3. 来る (to come)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
ょ 4. 読む (to read)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
た 5. 立つ (to stand)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
あやま 6. 謝 る (to apologize)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
はし 7. 走る (to run)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
よ 8. 呼ぶ (to call/invite)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

Excellent. Now let's take a look at some example sentences:

にほん い まえ にほんご <u>べんきょう</u>
2. 日本 に 行く 前 に 日本語 を <u>勉強 した ほう が いい</u>。
Nihon ni iku mae ni nihongo wo <u>benkyou shita hou ga ii</u>.
Before you go to Japan, <u>you should study</u> Japanese.





Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We can couple $\lceil \mathcal{U} \supset \mathcal{W} \rangle$ with the informal past tense or the \mathcal{U} -form of a verb to give pieces of advice or warnings
- When the $\[\[\[\] \] \]$ with $\[\[\[\] \] \]$ it expresses that something should *not* be done

Chapter 29: The **7**-form

It is now time to add another weapon to our arsenal of verb conjugations. That weapon is the \mathcal{T} -form. Like being able to find the $\sharp \mathcal{T}$ -stem of a verb, knowing how to conjugate to the \mathcal{T} -form of a verb will allow us to express ourselves in many new ways.

Before we learn the different ways to use the \mathcal{T} -form, however, first, we must learn how to conjugate to it. And as always, we'll start by taking a look at the Type I verbs:

Type I Verbs:

Here is a little chart showing which Type I verb endings conjugate into what:

Verb ending	て-form ending
<u></u>	って
<u> つ</u>	って
3	って
<u></u>	んで
<u>む</u>	んで
め	んで
<u>す</u>	して
<u> </u>	いて
<u><</u>	いで

If you're thinking, 'Wait a minute, this looks familiar!' Good job for noticing. It should look familiar, because this is the same chart we saw in chapter 20 for conjugating to the informal past tense. The only difference being, all of the $\lceil t \rceil$'s and $\lceil t \rceil$'s have been changed to $\lceil t \rceil$'s and $\lceil t \rceil$'s (respectively).

To conjugate a Type I verb to the τ -form, we simply drop the final character and append the appropriate ending. We can use the above chart as a guide.

Let's take a look at some verbs conjugated to the \(\tau\)-form to give you an idea of what it looks like.

Dictionary form	Drop the fin	nal cha	<u>racter</u>	+て-form	n ending	<u>T-form</u>
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買	+	って	\rightarrow	買って (buy)
ま 待つ (to wait)	\rightarrow	待	+	って	\rightarrow	待って (wait)
まわ 回る (to spin)	\rightarrow	口	+	って	\rightarrow	回って (spin)

よ 呼ぶ (to call out)
$$\rightarrow$$
 呼 + んで \rightarrow 呼んで (call out) よ 読む (to read) \rightarrow 読 + んで \rightarrow 読んで (read) し 死ぬ (to die) \rightarrow 死 + んで \rightarrow 死んで (die) か 書く (to write) \rightarrow 書 + いて \rightarrow 書いて (write) はな 話 \rightarrow はな 話 \rightarrow はな がぐ (to speak) \rightarrow 話 \rightarrow 泳いで (swim)

Try a few yourself. Please conjugate the following verbs to their τ -forms:

Dictionary form		<u>T-form</u>
か 1. 噛む (to chew)	\rightarrow	
た 2. 立つ (to stand)	\rightarrow	
3. そる (to shave)	\rightarrow	
か 4. 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	
うば 5. 奪 う (to take/steal)	\rightarrow	
さが 6. 探 す (to search for)	\rightarrow	
し 7. 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow	

Great. Now, let's move on. The next stop on our 7-form tour is our Type II verbs.

Type II Verbs:

Dictionary form		<u>ます-form</u>	<u>+て</u>	<u>T-form</u>
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べ ます	\rightarrow	食べて (eat)
み 見る (to watch)	\rightarrow	見 ます	\rightarrow	見て (watch)
や 辞める (to quit)	\rightarrow	辞め ます	\rightarrow	辞めて (quit)
あげる (to give)	\rightarrow	あげ ます	\rightarrow	あげて (give)

Try a few for yourself. First let's conjugate our verb to the \sharp \dagger -form and then to its T -form.

Dictionary form		<u>ます-form</u>	<u>T-form</u>
か 1.掛ける (to hang something)	\rightarrow		
み 2. 見える (to look/appear/seem)	\rightarrow		
で 3. 出かける (to go out)	\rightarrow		
お 4. 落ちる (to fall)	\rightarrow		
な 5. 投げる (to throw)	\rightarrow		

And on to our final step; Type III verbs.

Type III Verbs:

Dictionary	<u>form</u>	<u>ます-form</u>		<u>て-form</u>
する	\rightarrow	します	\rightarrow	して (do)
く 来る	\rightarrow	き 来 ます	\rightarrow	き 来て (come)

Now let's practice making the negative form.

To make the negative \mathcal{T} -form of our verb, all we have to do is conjugate it to the \mathcal{T} -form, and add \mathcal{T} . The good news is, this conjugation works the same on all verb types.

Type I verbs:

Dictionary form		ない-form		ないで-form
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買わない	\rightarrow	買わないで (don't buy)
ま 待つ (to wait)	\rightarrow	待たない	\rightarrow	待たないで (don't wait)
まわ 回る (to spin)	\rightarrow	回らない	\rightarrow	回らないで (don't spin)
よ 呼ぶ (to call out)	\rightarrow	呼ばない	\rightarrow	呼ばないで (don't call out)
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読まない	\rightarrow	読まないで (don't read)
し 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow	死なない	\rightarrow	死なないで (don't die)
か 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	書かない	\rightarrow	書かないで (don't write)

はな 話
$$\sigma$$
 (to speak) σ 話さない σ 話さないで (don't speak)

Type II Verbs:

Dictionary form ない-form ないで-form ないで-form た 食べる (to eat)
$$\rightarrow$$
 食べない \rightarrow 食べないで (don't eat) み 見る (to watch) \rightarrow 見ないで (don't watch) や 辞める (to quit) \rightarrow 辞めない \rightarrow おげない \rightarrow あげないで (don't quit)

Type III Verbs:

Dictionary form		ない-form		ないで-form
する (to do)	\rightarrow	しない	\rightarrow	しないで (don't do)
く 来る (to come)	\rightarrow	こ 来ない	\rightarrow	こ 来ないで (don't come)

Try a couple on your own. First, conjugate the verb to the $\alpha \cup$ -form and then to the $\alpha \cup$ α -form.

Dictionary form	<u>ない-form</u>	<u>ないで-form</u>
そそ 1. 注 ⟨ (to pour) →		→
はな 2. 話 す (to talk/speak)→		→
はし 3. 走る (to run) →		→
な 4. 投げる (to throw) →		→

```
L
5. 死ぬ (to die)
6. する (to do)
  け
7. 消す (to put out/extinguish)→
  つ
8. 付ける (to add)
  0)
9. 飲む (to drink)
   <
10. 来る (to come) \rightarrow
   ある
11. 歩 〈 (to walk) →
   かんが
12. 考 える (to think)
   た
13. 食べる (to eat)
   لح
14. 飛ぶ (to come)
```

Now that we know how to conjugate our verbs to the \mathcal{T} -form, in the next chapter, we'll look at some of the things we can do with our new, awesome powers.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- Conjugating to the 7-form follows very similar rules to conjugating to the informal past tense
- To get the negative \mathcal{T} -form, we simply append $[\mathcal{T}]$ to the \mathcal{T} -form of our verb

Chapter 30: Giving commands and making requests with the 7-form

To give a command or make a request, we need to use the τ -form of our verb.

Just like in English how we might tell someone to shut the door, or open the window, we can use the 7-form to accomplish the same thing in Japanese.

Let's look at some example sentences:

However, this is not a very polite way of speaking.

When we want to ask someone to do a favor for us, we simply append $\lceil \langle t \rangle \rangle$ to the ζ -form of our verb to make our request more polite.

Let's look at a few examples:

Kyou ha atsusi! Chotto Eakon wo <u>tsukete kudasai</u>. It's hot today. <u>Please turn on</u> the AC.

3. ローマジ で お 名前 を <u>書いて ください</u>。<u>**³⁹</u> Roomaji de onamae wo <u>kaite kudasai</u>.

Please write your name in romaji.

ま

4. ちょっと 待って ください。

Chotto matte kudasai.

Please wait a moment.

す

5. これを 捨てて ください。

Kore wo sutete kudasai.

Throw this away, please.

Some guy's pro tip #38:

It is common to proceed a small request with the word $\lceil 5 \rfloor 5 \rfloor$, which means 'a little,' or 'a bit.' It let's the listener know you are about to ask a favor.

Some guy's pro tip #39:

The word for name is 「名前 ,」 but often times you will see it with 「お」 attached to the front. This is known as an 'honorific prefix.' It doesn't change the meaning of the word, only its 'politeness level.' You will often see many familiar words with either 「お」 or 「ご」 attached to the front to make them more polite. Here are a few common words that take either 「お」 or 「ご」 honorific prefixes.

<u>お-prefix</u>		<u>ご-preix</u>
なまえ 名前 (name) →	お名前	じゅうしょ 住所 (address)→ ご住所
かあ 母 さん (mother) →	お母さん	しんぱい 心配 (worry) → ご心配
とう 父 さん (father) →	お父さん	しゅじん 主人 (husband) → ご主人
うち (home) →	おうち	かぞく 家族 (family) → ご家族

しごと
仕事 (work)
$$\rightarrow$$
 お仕事 \qquad あんしん
安心 (relief) \rightarrow ご安心
みず
水 (water) \rightarrow お水 \qquad 両親 (parents) \rightarrow ご両親
ぶじ
すし (sushi) \rightarrow おすし 無事 (safety) \rightarrow ご無事

Explaining which words take $\lceil \sharp \rceil$ as an honorific prefix and which words take $\lceil \sharp \rceil$ is way beyond the scope of this book. Unfortunately, it may be easiest to just memorize which words get which prefix.

Since we know how to conjugate to the ないで-form, we can also ask someone to *not* do something.

し 1. ドア を <u>閉めないで</u>。 Doa wo <u>shimenaide</u>.

まど あ

Don't close the door.

2. 窓 を 開けないで。
Mado wo akenaide.
Don't open the window.

でんき <u>け</u> . 電気 を <u>消さないで</u>。 Denki wo <u>kesanaide</u>.

Don't turn off the lights.

す。 4. これ を 捨てないで。 Kore wo sutenaide. Don't throw this away.

We can also make use of $\lceil \langle t \rangle$ to make our requests to *not* do something a little more polite.

きょうしつ た もの <u>た</u>

1. 教室 で食べ物 を食べないでください。

Kyoushitsu de tabemono wo <u>tabenaide kudasai</u>.

Please don't eat food in the classroom.

へん こと <u>い</u>
2. 変 な 事 を <u>言わないで ください</u>。 Hen na koto wo iwanaide kudasai.

Please don't say something weird/strange.

たし <u>た</u> 私 の ランチ を <u>食べないで ください</u>。 わたし Watashi no ranchi wo tabenaide kudasai. Please don't eat my lunch.

Now it's your turn. Fill in the blanks using the verbs in parentheses to complete the requests.

<u>Pra</u>

<u>acti</u>	ce problems:
1	し すみません、ちょっと まど をください。(閉める)
1.	Sumimasen, chotto mado wo kudasai. (shimeru)
	Excuse me, close the window please.
	Excuse me, close the window please.
	だいじ わす
2.	これ は 大事 です よ。。 (忘 れる)
	Kore ha daiji desu yo (wasureru)
	This is important. Don't forget.
	つめあたた
3	冷 たい です。これ をください。(暖 める) <u>*</u> ⁴⁰
٦.	Tsumetai desu. kore wo kudasai. (atatameru)
	This is cold. Warm this up please.
	としょかん おおごえ はな
4.	図書館 で 大声 でください。(話す)
	Toshokan de oogoe dekudasai. (hanasu)
	図書館 で 大声 でください。(話 す) Toshokan de oogoe de kudasai. (hanasu) Please don't talk loudly in the library.
_	てあら
5.	手を。(洗う)
	Te wo (arau)
	Wash your hands.
	なまえ
6	ここ に お 名前 をください。(書く)
0.	Koko ni onamae wo kudasai. (kaku)
	Please write your name here.
	わたし にっき よ
7.	私 の 日記 を。(読む)
	Watashi no nikki wo (yomu)
	Don't read my diary.

Some guy's pro tip #40:

A very common mistake is to confuse 「寒い」(cold) and 「冷たい」(cold).

さむ

「寒い」is used to refer to the surrounding temperature:

Ex. この 部屋 は 寒 い です。

Kono heya ha samui desu.

This room is cold.

つめ

Whereas 「冷たい」 is used to refer to the temperature of an object:

Kono aisukuriimu ha tsumetai desu.

This ice cream is cold.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We can use the 7-form to tell someone to do something
- We can append 「ください」 to our verb's て-form to make our request more polite
- We can use $\lceil \sim t \rceil$ to request someone *not* do something
- We can append 「ください」 to our verb's ないで-form to make our request more polite
- 「お」 and 「ご」 are often used as honorific prefixes さむ
- 「寒い」is used to refer to weather as being cold つめ
- 「冷たい」is used to refer to an object as being cold

Chapter 31: Listing off actions with the \(\tau \)-form

Now is a really exciting time in our Japanese learning adventure. With our knowledge of the ₹-form, we can now begin to construct much more complex sentences. So far, our sentences have only contained one action by the subject: "I ate lunch." or, "He cleaned his room." Now, using the ₹-form, we can make sentences like "I ate lunch and took a nap," or "He cleaned his room, did his homework, made dinner, and went to bed."

Let's look at an example to see how using the \mathcal{T} -form can be used to string our ideas together. The first example sentence does not use the \mathcal{T} -form.

As you can imagine, this is not a very natural way of speaking, and sounds just as awkward in Japanese as it does in English. But if we use the \mathcal{T} -form on the verb in our first sentence, we can connect it to our second sentence like so:

Late lunch and then tools a non

I ate lunch and then took a nap.

Let's take a look at some more examples:

4. 彼らはドアを蹴って逃げました。

Karera ha doa wo kette nigemashita.

They kicked the door and ran.

 わたし
 かえ
 ほん
 よ
 あ
 ばんごはん
 つく

 5. 私 は 帰って 本 を 読んで シャワーを 浴びて 晩 御飯 を 作って えいが み ね 映画 を 見て 寝ます。

Watashi ha kaette hon wo yonde shawaa wo abite ban gohan wo tsukutte eiga wo mite nemasu.

I'm going to go home, read a book, take a shower, cook dinner, watch a movie, and go to bed.

The only thing you have to remember is that only the *last* verb in our list of instructions will take $\lceil \sim \tau \mid \exists \iota : \bot$. All of the other verbs are simply left in the τ -form.

け は みが

1. テレビ を 消して 歯 を 磨 いて ください。

Terebi wo keshite ha wo migaite kudasai.

Turn off the T.V. and brush your teeth.

なまえ か うけつけ だ

2. お 名前 を 書いて 受付 に 出して ください。

Onamae wo kaite uketsuke ni dashite kudasai.

Please write your name and turn it in at the counter.

かわき

3. じゃがいも の 皮 を むいて切って フライパン に入れて ください。

Jagaimo no kawa wo muitekitte furaipan ni irete kudasai.

Please peel and cut the potatoes and put them in the frying pan.

Now try a few of the practice problems below. Fill in the blanks by conjugating the given verbs to their correct forms.

Practice problems:

	きょねん にほん	けっこん	<
1.	. 去年 、 日本 に	結婚	。(来る、する)
	Kyonen, nihon ni		
	Last year I came to Japan and		
	あたら		すっく
2.	2. それ を 新 Sore wo atarashii	しいのを	。(捨てる、 作 る)
	Sore wo atarashii	no wo ((suteru, tsukuru)
	Throw that away and make a	new one, please.	
			つく
3.	3. パソコン をファイルを Pasokon wo fairu	:プリント	。(つける,作 る, する)
	Pasokon wo fairu	wo purinto	(tsukeru, tsukuru, suru)
	Please turn on the computer,	make the file and print it ou	it.
	わたし にほん	にほんご べんさ	() ·)
1	1. 私 は 日本 に	日本語 た 働	・ょう 強。(行く,する)
⊣.	Watashi ha nihon ni	日本田 で 旭	(iku suru)
	I'm going to go to Japan and s		(Ika, 5ara)
	8 8	J	
	わたし にほんご いっ	しょうけんめい べんきょ	: う
5.	5. 私 は 日本語 を		
		は	
	よう に なりました。(する、	、話す)	
		ukenmei benkyou	you ni narimashita.
	(suru, hanasu)		
	I studied Japanese as hard as	I could, and I learned how f	to speak it.

Chapter summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- By making use of the τ -form, we can include multiple actions in one sentence
- We can also couple this structure with $\lceil \sim \tau \mid \langle \, t \, \rangle \, d$ for instructions that involve multiple steps
- When using this structure, all verbs will be in the τ -form except the last one.

Chapter 32: Expressing an ongoing action with 「~

Another useful grammatical structure we can make with the \mathcal{T} -form of a verb is $\lceil \mathcal{T} \vee \mathcal{T} \vee \mathcal{T} \rceil$. This equates to what is known as the present-progressive form in English (otherwise known as the '-ing'-form). For example, if we want to say "I'm watching T.V." or "She is listening to music," we need to use the present-progressive to communicate that the action is happening as the sentence is being spoken. Using $\lceil \mathcal{T} \vee \mathcal{T} \rangle \supset \rceil$ will allow us to do the same thing.

Using what we have already learned about the τ -form, conjugating to the τ - τ δ form is simply a matter of appending τ δ to the τ -form of our verb.

You'll see that this structure works the same for all verb Types.

Type I Verbs:

Dictionary form	<u>て-form</u>	ている-form
よ 読む (to read)	読んで →	読んでいる (reading)
およ 泳 ぐ (to swim) →	泳いで →	泳いでいる (swimming)
はな 話 す (to talk/speak)→	話して →	話している (talking/speaking)
と 飛ぶ (to jump/fly) →	飛んで →	飛んでいる (jumping/flying)

Type II Verbs:

Dictionary form	<u>て-form</u>	ている-form	
た 食べる (to eat) →	食べて →	食べている (eating)	
な 投げる (to throw) →	投げて →	投げている (throwing)	
かんが 考 える (to think)→	考えて →	考えている (thinking)	

Type III Verbs:

Dictionary form		<u>て-form</u>		ている-form
する (to do)	\rightarrow	して	\rightarrow	している (doing)
く 来る (to come)	\rightarrow	き 来て	\rightarrow	き 来ている (coming)

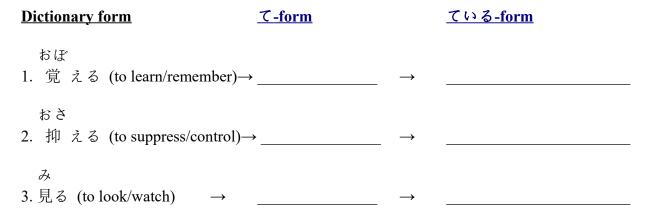
As you can see, the type of verb (I, II, or III) doesn't matter. Just to drive the point home, all we have to do is add $\lceil \lor \lor \circlearrowleft \rfloor$ to the verb's \land -form and we get the equivalent of an English verb's '-ing'-form.

Try conjugating a few yourself. And just for some extra reinforcement, before conjugating to the τ \circ -form, conjugate the verb to its τ -form as well.

Type I Verbs:

Dictionary form		<u>T-form</u>	ている-form
ある 1. 歩く (to walk)	\rightarrow		
な 2. 泣く (to cry)	\rightarrow		
お 3. 押す (to push)	\rightarrow	→	
ひ 4. 引 < (to pull)	\rightarrow	<i>→</i>	

Type II Verbs:



Type III Verbs:

Dictionary form 7-form 7 to 3-form

1. する (to do) → _____ → ____

2. 来る (to come) \rightarrow \rightarrow

Let's look at some example conversations:

なに

1. A: 何 を <u>している</u> ん です か? <u>*</u>⁴¹ Nani wo <u>shiteiru</u> n desu ka? What <u>are</u> you <u>doing</u>?

わたし <u>み</u>
B: 私 は テレビ を <u>見ています</u>。
Watashi ha terebi wo <u>miteimasu</u>.
I'm watching T.V.

なに <u>よ</u>
2. A: 何 を <u>読んでいる</u> ん です か?
Nani wo <u>yondeiru</u> n desu ka?
What are you reading?

わたし しんぶん <u>よ</u>
B: 私 は 新聞 を <u>読んでいます</u>。
Watashi ha shinbun wo <u>yondeimasu</u>.
I'm reading the newspaper.

た 3. A: どこで 食べている ん ですか? Doko de <u>tabeteiru</u> n desu ka? Where <u>are</u> you <u>eating</u>?

た B: アパート で 食べている。 Apato de <u>tabeteiru</u>. I'm eating at my apartment. かれ <u>す</u> 4. A: 彼 は どこ に <u>住んでいる</u> ん ですか? Kare ha doko ni sundeiru n desu ka?

Where does he live (Where is he living)?

かれ にほん す

B: 彼 は 日本 に 住んでいます。

Kare ha nihon ni sundeimasu.

He lives in Japan (He is living in Japan).

かのじょ なに べんきょう

5. A: 彼女 は 何 を <u>勉強</u> <u>している</u>んですか?

Kanojo ha nani wo benkyou shiteiru n desu ka?

What is she studying?

かのじょ えいご べんきょう

B: 彼女 は 英語 を 勉強 <u>している。*4</u>2

Kanojo ha eigo wo benkyou shiteiru.

She's studying English.

6. A: さやかさん は どこ です か?

Sayaka-san ha doko desu ka?

Where's Sayaka?

かのじょおよ

B: 彼女 はプールで 泳 いでいる。

Kanojo ha puuru de oyoideru.

She's swimming in the pool.

あめ ふ

7. A: 雨 が <u>降ってる</u>。<u>*</u>43

Ame ga futteru!

It's rainin'!

ほんとう

B: 本当 だ!

Hontou da!

Oh, it is!

Some guy's pro tip #41:

In spoken Japanese, when $\lceil \mathcal{O} \rfloor$ is used in a sentence asking about or describing the state of something (like in the above examples), it is often shortened to $\lceil \mathcal{K} \rfloor$ instead.

Some guy's pro tip #42:

You may have noticed that whenever we say the name of a language in Japanese, it always ends in [

語.」This Kanji literally means 'word' or 'language.' For the most part, we can simply say the name of a

country and append 「語,」 and that's the language the people speak. Naturally, there are some えいご

exceptions, and 「 英語 」 is one you should definitely commit to memory.

English would be 「アメリカ語 ,」but you'd be wrong. In America we speak 「 英語 .」English came from England, so the Kanji that represents England (「英」) gets 「語」 when we want to say 'English.' 'Spanish' is another one to be careful of. In Mexico (メクシコ) they don't speak 「メクシコ ご

語.」They speak「スペイン語,」because Spanish originated in Spain.

Some guy's pro tip #43:

In casual Japanese, you'll often see the $\lceil \iota \iota \rfloor$ get dropped from $\lceil \sim \tau \iota \iota \iota \delta . \rfloor$

2. 彼らは 映画 を <u>見ていません</u>。

Karera ha eiga wo <u>miteimasen</u>. The are not watching a movie.

Let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Translate the following sentences into Japanese using the given words in parentheses (use the polite form of the verbs).

<u>かのじょ えいご べんきょう</u>
5. <u>She isn't studying English</u>. (<u>彼女</u> / <u>英語</u> / <u>勉強</u> <u>する</u>)

6. She is cleaning the house. (彼女 / 家 /そうじ する)

7. <u>You are watching a movie</u>. (<u>あなた</u> / <u>映画</u> / <u>見る</u>)

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- This grammar structure works for Type I, II and III verbs
- We can describe an ongoing action by appending $\lceil \iota \rceil \delta \rfloor$ to the τ -form of our verb
- The formal negative form of $\lceil \sim \tau \cup \delta \rfloor$ is $\lceil \sim \tau \cup \sharp \ \forall \delta \rfloor$
- The casual negative form of $\lceil \sim \tau \circ \delta \rfloor$ is $\lceil \sim \tau \circ \delta \circ \delta \rfloor$
- In spoken Japanese, $\lceil \mathcal{O} \rfloor$ is often shortened to $\lceil \mathcal{L} \rfloor$ when asking questions about the state or condition of something

ے:

- We can add 「語」 to a country's name to get the language that country speaks (with a few exceptions)
- 「~ている」 is often shortened to 「~てる」 in casual Japanese

Chapter 33: The past-progressive with 「~ていました」

If you've read and understood chapter 32 (how to use $\lceil \sim \tau \lor \delta \rfloor$ to describe ongoing actions), then this chapter should be a piece of cake.

た Just like we conjugate our dictionary form verbs to the past tense (食べる \rightarrow 食べました), we can also apply the same line of thinking to verbs in their ている-form (食べている \rightarrow 食べていました).

This grammar structure describes an action that was ongoing in the past, but is no longer continuing *now* in the present, and equates to what we would call the 'past progressive' in English. Let's take a look at a couple quick examples.

Watashi ha kinou ichinichijuu benkyou shiteimashita.

I was studying all day yesterday.

It was raining this morning.

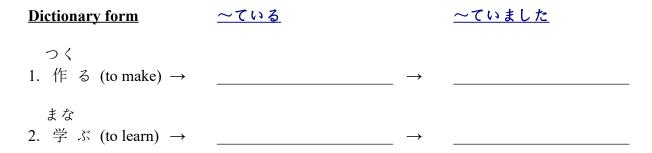
We can make this structure in two easy steps:

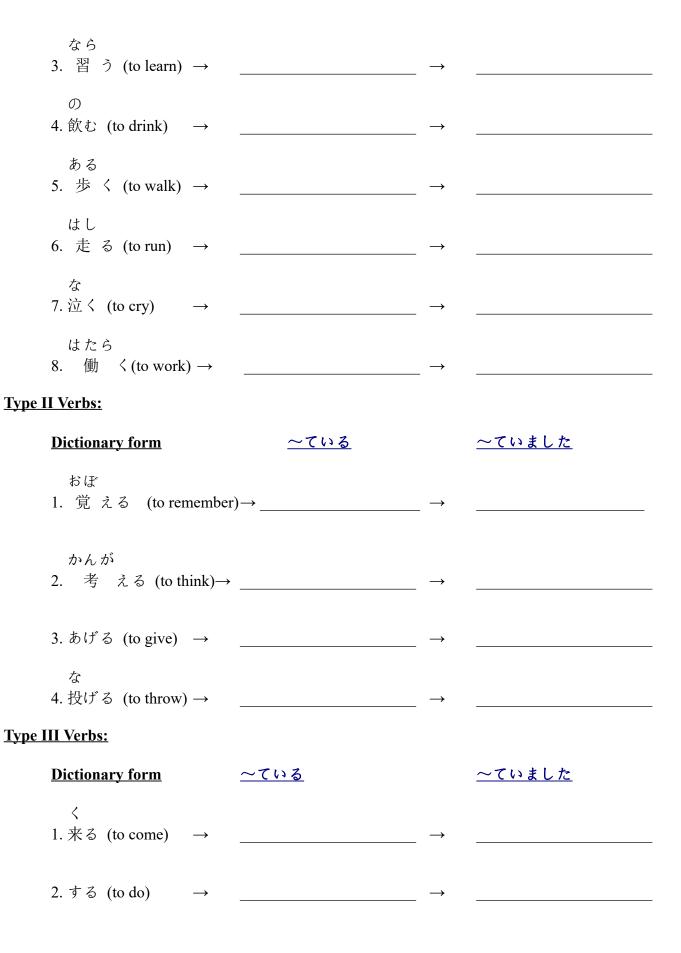
- 1. Conjugate the verb to its ている-form
- 2. Drop the final $\lceil \delta \rfloor$ character and add $\lceil \sharp \lfloor t \xi \rfloor$

Fortunately, all Type I, II and III verbs can be conjugated this way.

Here are some verbs you can try conjugating for practice. From the verb's dictionary form, conjugate to the $\tau \mapsto \delta$ -form and then to the past progressive form.

Type I Verbs:





Let's look at some example sentences:

ご ねん まえ わたし

1. 五 年 前 、 私 は アメリカ に 住んでいました。

Go nen mae, watashi ha amerika ni sundeimashita.

Five years ago, I was living in America

きのう なん おんがく き

2. 昨日、何の 音楽 を聞いていましたか?

Kinou, nan no ongaku wo kiiteimashita ka?

Yesterday, what music were you listening to?

なんね

3. A:ママ、何でパパは寝ているの?

Mama, nande papa ha neteiru no?

Mom, why is Dad sleeping?

いちにちじゅう はたら

B: パパ は 一日中 <u>働 いていた</u> から。<u>*</u>⁴

Papa ha ichi nichi juu hataraiteita kara.

Because he was working all day.

わたし きのう いちにちじゅう べんきょう

4. 私 は 昨日 一日中 <u>勉強</u> していた。

Watashi ha ichi nichi juu benkyou shiteita.

I was studying all day yesterday.

きのう あめ ふ

5. 昨日 雨 が ずっと 降っていました。

Kinou ame ga zutto futteimashita.

It was raining all day yesterday.

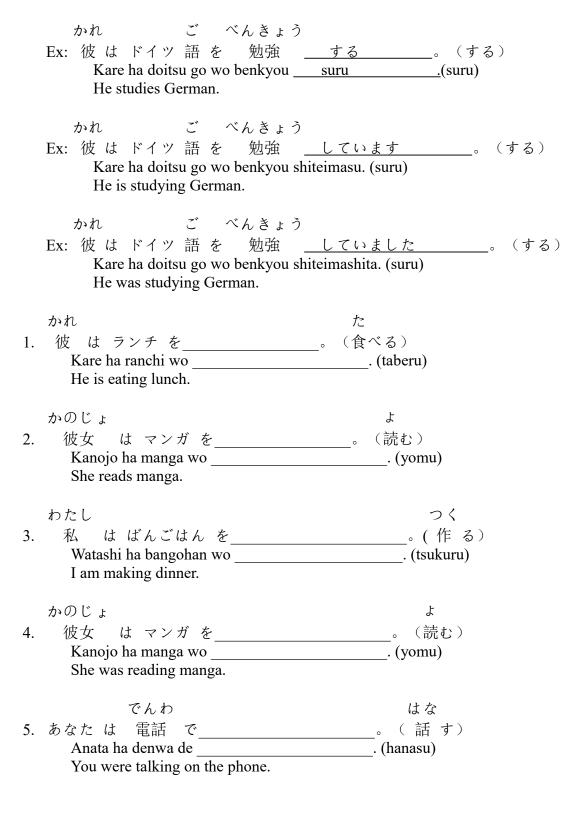
Some guy's pro tip #44:

We make the informal form of this grammar structure by simply replacing the $\lceil \delta \rfloor$ of the $\lceil \delta \rceil$ of the $\lceil \delta \rceil$ form of our verb with $\lceil \delta \rceil$.

Now for some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Using your knowledge of this chapter and the last, fill in the blanks with either the dictionary, $\tau \in \mathfrak{t}$, or $\tau \in \mathfrak{t}$ form of the given verb based on the given English translation of the sentence.



	かれ	\mathcal{O}
6.	彼 は コーヒー を	。 (飲む)
	Kare ha coohii wo	. (nomu)
	He drinks coffee.	
	わたし にほんご べんきょう	
7.	私 は 日本語 を 勉強	。(する)
	Watashi ha nihongo wo benkyou	. (suru)
	I am studying Japanese (right now).	
	かのじょ	す
8.	彼女 は アメリカ に	。(住む)
	Kanojo ha amerika ni	(sumu)
	She is living in America.	

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- The ていました-form of a verb is used to talk about an action that was ongoing in the past
- The past tense informal form of the $\tau \cup \delta$ -form is $\lceil -\tau \cup \tau \rfloor$
- This grammar structure works on all verb Types

Chapter 34: Doing something for others with $\lceil \sim \tau$ $\delta = 0$ $\delta = 0$ $\delta = 0$ and $\delta = 0$ $\delta = 0$

Continuing on with our useful grammar structures involving the \mathcal{T} -form, I think now would be a great time to take a look at $\lceil \sim \mathcal{T} \circ \mathcal{H} \circ \mathcal{I} \rangle$, $\lceil \sim \mathcal{T} \circ \mathcal{I} \circ \mathcal{I} \rangle$, and $\lceil \sim \mathcal{T} \circ \mathcal{H} \circ \mathcal{I} \rangle$. The rules for this structure are very similar to what we studied back in chapter 27. If you haven't had a chance to check it out yet, I highly suggest you do before continuing with this chapter. Likewise, if you aren't too confident in using $\lceil \mathcal{I} \circ \mathcal{I} \circ \mathcal{I} \rangle$, $\lceil \mathcal{I} \circ \mathcal{I} \circ \mathcal{I} \rangle$, it would be a good idea to review them now.

These structures can be a bit confusing. So, let's take a look at them one at a time. First, let's check out $\lceil \sim \tau \, \delta t' \, \delta . \rfloor$

When we want to express an action that is done for the purpose or benefit of someone else, we can use $\lceil \sim \tau \, \text{bif 3.} \rfloor$ As you already know, $\lceil \, \text{bif 3} \, \rfloor$ means 'to give.' If you keep that in mind, it'll be easy to understand how this grammar structure works.

Since we're already masters of conjugating verbs to their \mathcal{T} -forms, you should have no problem with this. We simply append $\lceil \mathfrak{b} \mid \mathfrak{t} \rceil$ to the \mathcal{T} -form of our verb. Let's look at some examples:

Dictionary form		て-form		<u>~てあげる</u>	
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買って	\rightarrow	買ってあげる	(to buy for [recipient])
つく 作 る (to make)	\rightarrow	作って	\rightarrow	作ってあげる	(to make for [recipient])
か 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	書いて	\rightarrow	書いてあげる	(to write for [recipient])
おし 教 える (to teach)	\rightarrow	教えて	\rightarrow	教えてあげる	(to teach for [recipient])
ひら 開く (to open)	\rightarrow	開いて	\rightarrow	開いてあげる	(to open for [recipient])
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読んで	\rightarrow	読んであげる	(to read for [recipient])
する (to do)	\rightarrow	して	\rightarrow	してあげる (t	o do for [recipient])

な
投げる (to throw)
$$\rightarrow$$
 投げて \rightarrow 投げてあげる (to throw for [recipient])

Try some yourself:

Dictionary form	<u>T-form</u>		<u>~てあげる</u>
き 1. 聞く (to ask/listen)→		\rightarrow	
そそ 2. 注ぐ (to pour) →		\rightarrow	
の 3. 飲む (to drink) →		\rightarrow	
し 4. 閉める (to close) →		\rightarrow	
も 5. 持つ (to hold) →		\rightarrow	
ま 6. 待つ (to wait) →		\rightarrow	
かんが 7. 考 える (to think)→		\rightarrow	
く 8. 来る (to come) →		\rightarrow	

Conjugating is all well and good, but let's look at some example sentences to give you a better idea of how they work. Our sentences will look something like this:

Subject	Recipient	<u>Object</u>	<u>Verb</u>
<u>私</u> 彼/彼女 <u>は</u> あなた	私 彼/彼女 <u>に</u> あなた	[object] <u>&</u>	[てあげる]

わたし わたし

Please notice that the 'Recipient' cannot be \lceil 私 .」 If \lceil 私 」 is the recipient, we need to use $\lceil \sim \tau \leqslant \hbar$ る. 」

Let's take a look at some example sentences:

<u>わたし</u> はは か 私 _は 母 _に ケーキ を 買ってあげました。 Watashi ha haha ni keeki wo katteagemashita. I bought a cake for Mom. かれ てがみ せんせい か かれ 彼の先生は彼に手紙を書いてあげました。 Kare no sensei ha kare ni tegami wo kaiteagemashita. His teacher wrote a letter for him. かれ ともだち 3. 彼 は 彼 の 友達 に セーター を 作 ってあげました。 Kare ha kare no tomodachi ni seetaa wo tsukutteagemashita. He made a sweater for his friend. ともだち えいご おし わたし <u>私 は 友達 に 英語 を 教 えてあげています</u>。 Watashi ha tomodachi ni eigo wo oshieteageteimasu. I am teaching my friend English. じょせい かれ 5. 彼 は かわいい 女性 に ドア を 開けてあげる。 Kare ha kawaii josei ni doa wo aketeageru. He opens doors for cute girls. かれ かれ にほんご <u>彼 は 彼 に 日本語 の メール を</u> 読んであげる。 Kare ha kare ni nihongo no meeru wo yondeageru. He reads Japanese e-mails for him. わたし 私 は 父 に ばんごはん を 作ってあげました。 Watashi ha chichi ni bangohan wo tsukutteagemashita. I cooked dinner for Dad. こども いぬ 8. 子供 は 犬 に ボール を 投げてやっている。*45 Kodomo ha inu ni booru wo nageteyatteiru. The child is throwing the ball for the dog. かのじょ かれ な 9. 彼 は 彼女 に ボール を 投げてあげた。

Kare ha kanojo ni booru wo nageteageta.

He threw the ball for her.

Some guy's pro tip #45:

The casual form of $\lceil \sim \tau \delta t' \delta \rfloor$ is $\lceil \sim \tau \delta \delta \delta \rfloor$. When the recipient of an action is an animal, it is common to use $\lceil \sim \tau \delta \delta \rfloor$ instead of $\lceil \sim \tau \delta t' \delta \delta \rfloor$ since animals are considered to be socially 'lower' than people.

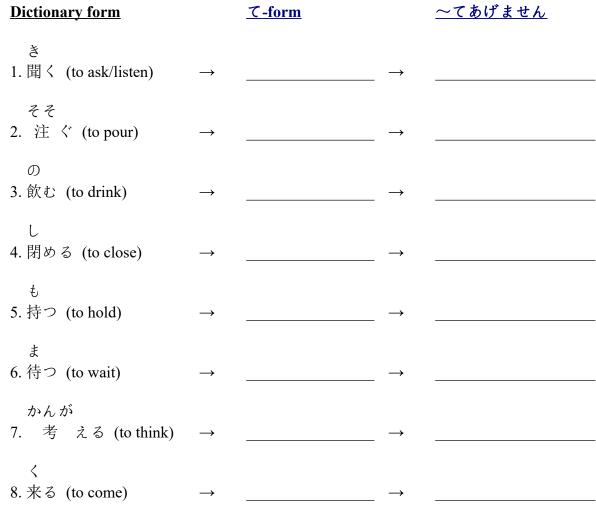
However, it is also acceptable to use $\lceil \sim 7 \ \% \ \delta \rfloor$ toward people as well, when that person is socially 'lower' than the speaker; a boss to an employee, or a parent to a child, for instance.

Be sure <u>not</u> to use this when the recipient of your action is socially 'higher' than you!

As you have no doubt already concluded yourself, we aren't limited to only speaking in the affirmative. We can conjugate our verbs to the negative form as well.

To do so, we simply drop the trailing $\lceil \delta \rfloor$ from $\lceil \sim \tau \, \delta \, | \, \delta \rfloor$ and add $\lceil \sharp \, \forall \delta \rfloor$.

Dictionary form		<u>T-form</u>		<u>~てあげません</u>
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買って	\rightarrow	買ってあげません (won't buy for [recipient])
つく 作 る (to make)	\rightarrow	作って	\rightarrow	作ってあげません (won't make for [recipient])
か 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	書いて	\rightarrow	書いてあげません (won't write for [recipient])
おし 教 える (to teach)	\rightarrow	教えて	\rightarrow	教えてあげません (won't teach for [recipient])
ひら 開く (to open)	\rightarrow	開いて	\rightarrow	開いてあげません (won't open for [recipient])
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読んで	\rightarrow	読んであげません (won't read for [recipient])
する (to do)	\rightarrow	して	\rightarrow	してあげません (won't do for [recipient])
な 投げる (to throw)	\rightarrow	投げて	\rightarrow	投げてあげません (won't throw for [recipient])
Try some yourself:				



No let's take a look at the same example sentences above, but this time with the verbs written in the negative form.

<u>わたし</u> <u>はは</u> <u>か</u>
1. <u>私 は 母 に ケーキ を 買って あげませんでした</u>。

<u>Watashi ha haha ni keeki wo katte agemasendeshita.</u>
<u>I didn't buy a cake for Mom.</u>

<u>かれ せんせい かれ てがみ か</u>
2. <u>彼 の 先生 は 彼 に 手紙 を 書いてあげなかった。**6</u>

Kare no sensei ha kare ni tegami wo kaiteagenakatta.

His teacher didn't write a letter for him.

 かれ
 かれ
 ともだち
 つく

 3. 彼 は 彼 の 友達 に セーターを 作ってあげませんでした。
 Kare ha kare no tomodachi ni seetaa wo tsukutteagemasendeshita.

 He didn't make a sweater for his friend.

- <u>わたし</u> <u>ともだち</u> <u>えいご</u> おし
- 4. <u>私 は 友達 に 英語 を 教 えてあげていません</u>。

Watashi ha tomodachi ni eigo wo oshieteageteimasen.

I am not teaching my friend English.

- 5. 彼 は かわいい 女性 に ドア を 開けてあげない。

Kare ha kawaii josei ni doa wo aketeagenai.

He doesn't open doors for cute girls.

- <u>かれ かれ にほんご</u> よ
- 6. 彼 は 彼 に 日本語 の メール を 読んであげません。

Kare ha kare ni nihongo no meeru wo yondeagemasen.

He doesn't read Japanese e-mails for him.

- <u>わたし</u> <u>ちち</u> つく
- 7. $\underline{\lambda}$ <u>は</u> 父 <u>に</u> <u>ばんごはん を</u> 作 <u>ってあげませんでした</u>。

Watashi ha chichi ni bangohan wo tsukutteagemasendeshita.

I didn't cook dinner for Dad.

- こども いぬ な
- 8. 子供 は 犬 に ボール を 投げてやっていない。

Kodomo ha inu ni booru wo nageteyatteinai.

The child isn't throwing the ball for the dog.

- <u>かれ</u> かのじょ な
- 9. <u>彼 は 彼女 に ボール を</u> 投げてあげませんでした。

Kare ha kanojo ni booru wo nageteagemasendeshita.

He didn't throw the ball for her.

Some guy's pro tip #46:

So, how was it? Not *too* bad, right? What I really want you to notice is how we can use all of the conjugations we have learned up to now and apply them to $\lceil \sim \tau \, \delta \, \mathcal{F} \, \delta . \rfloor$ If we want to talk about something in the past, we can say $\lceil \sim \tau \, \delta \, \mathcal{F} \, \delta . \rfloor$ Likewise, if we want to talk about an ongoing action, we can use $\lceil \sim \tau \, \delta \, \mathcal{F} \, \tau \, \mathcal{F} \, \delta . \rfloor$

You will find that this is a common theme with ALL of our grammar structures. If you see something in its dictionary form, you can conjugate it like you would any other verb.

To reiterate, even though 「作ってあげる」 is a conjugated form of 「作る,」「作ってあげる」 is still considered to be in its dictionary form because 「あげる」 isn't being conjugated (We know this because it ends with 「る」). Thus, all of the same rules that apply to dictionary form verbs still apply

to $\lceil \sim \tau \, \delta \, t \, \, \, \delta$. This knowledge will become extremely useful as our sentences and grammar structures become more complex. That's why it is so important to build a solid foundation of the basics, before taking on the 'more difficult' stuff.

Practice problems:

The following problems were created with the above stated in mind. When you conjugate the verb, you'll have to consider the proper tense. I encourage you to read the English translation before attempting to answer. Answer using the polite form of the verb.

1.	かれ とも かれ 彼 の 友 だち は 彼 に プレゼント を Kare no tomodachi ha kare ni purezento wo His friend bought a present for him.	か 。(買う) (kau)
2.	かれ かのじょ にほんご 彼 は 彼女 に 日本語 を Kare ha kanojo ni nihongo wo He is teaching her Japanese.	おし 。(教える) (oshieru)
3.	かれ かのじょ にほんご 彼 は 彼女 に 日本語 を Kare ha kanojo ni nihongo wo He is not teaching her Japanese.	
4.	かのじょ かれ しゅくだい 彼女 は 彼 の 宿題 を Kanojo ha kare no shukudai wo She won't do his homework for him.	
5.	いま わたし はは いもうと 今、 私 の 母 は 妹 にばんごはんを Ima, watashi no haha wa imouto ni bangohan wo Right now, my mom is making dinner for my little sister.	
6.	ジェレミー は さやか に これ を Jeremii ha sayaka ni kore wo Jeremy is writing this for Sayaka.	。 (書く)
7.	ジェレミー は さやか に これ を Jeremii ha sayaka ni kore wo Jeremy is not writing this for Sayaka.	。 (書く)
8.	わたし かれ 私 は 彼 に これ を Watashi ha kare ni kore wo	か 。(買う) (kau)

I bought this for him.

Now it's time to tackle our next hurdle (As you may have guessed, I'm quite the sportsman) with $\lceil \sim \tau + \delta \rceil$.

We use this structure when we want to describe someone doing something for someone else. You may be asking, "Wait a second... Isn't that what $\lceil \sim \tau \not \circ t \not \circ \rfloor$ was for?" Yes, it certainly was, but in the case of $\lceil \sim \tau \not \circ \circ \rangle$, the *doer* of the action is marked with either the particle $\lceil \iota \zeta \rfloor$ or $\lceil \iota v \rangle \circ \circ \rangle$, and the recipient is marked with $\lceil \iota \zeta \rfloor$

When using $\lceil \sim \tau \, \delta \, t \, \rceil \, \delta$, the doer of the action was marked with $\lceil t \, \zeta \rfloor$ and the recipient of the action with $\lceil t \, \zeta \rfloor$ as in:

But, as we can see in the following example sentence, when using $\lceil \sim \tau \notin \beta \ni$, \rfloor the doer of the action is marked with $\lceil \iota \xi \rfloor$ and the recipient of the action is marked with $\lceil \iota \xi \rfloor$

Kare ha kanojo ni purezento wo katte moratta. She bought a present for him. (He was bought a present by her.)

But before we get ahead of ourselves, let's check out some example conjugations.

The following table shows all of the same verbs from the last chapter, except they are conjugated to the 7 + 5 form. Feel free to just glance over it, but I encourage you to do the practice part.

Dictionary form		<u>T-form</u>		<u>~てもらう</u>		
か						
買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買って	\rightarrow	買ってもらう (to buy for [recipient])		

つく 作る (to make) 作って 作ってもらう (to make for [recipient]) か 書く (to write) 書いてもらう (to write for [recipient]) 書いて おし 教えてもらう (to teach for [recipient]) 教 える (to teach) → 教えて ひら 開く (to open) 開いて 開いてもらう (to open for [recipient]) ょ 読む (to read) 読んで 読んでもらう (to read for [recipient]) する (to do) してもらう (to do for [recipient]) して

Try some yourself:

Dictionary form		<u>T-form</u>		<u>~てもらう</u>
き 1. 聞く (to ask/listen)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
そそ 2. 注ぐ (to pour)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
の 3. 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
し 4. 閉める (to close)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
も 5. 持つ (to hold)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
ま 6. 待つ (to wait)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
かんが 7. 考 える (to think)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
く 8. 来る (to come)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

Our sentence structure for this section will look very similar to that of $\lceil \sim \tau \, \text{bif 3}, \rfloor$ so be sure to pay close attention to the particles and *who* is doing *what* action.

pay close attention to the particles and who is doing what action.						
Recipient	<u>Doer</u>	Obje	ect	<u>Verb</u>		
<u>私</u> 彼/彼女 <u>は</u> あなた	私 <u>彼/彼女</u> あなた	に/から [obje	ect] <u>&</u>	[てもらう]		
Please notice that げる.」	わけ the 'Doer' cannot be 「 オ	とし 私 .」If the 'Doer'		to use「~てあ		
Let's take a look a	t some example sentences	:				
1. <u>私</u> は <u>Watash</u>	かれ つく 彼 に これ を 作 ni ha kare ni kore wo tsuku de this for me.	ってもらいました	^{در} ه			
かのじょ かれ にほんご おし 2. 彼女 は 彼 に 日本語 を 教 えてもらっている。 Kanojo ha kare ni nihongo wo oshietemoratteiru. He is teaching her Japanese.						
かれ かれ かのじょ しゅくだい 3. 彼 は 彼 の 彼女 から 宿題 をしてもらう。** Kare ha kare no kanojo kara shukudai wo shitemorau. His girlfriend does his homework for him.						
<u>かれ</u> せんせい <u>にほんご</u> てがみ よ 4. <u>彼 は 先生 に その 日本語 の 手紙 を 読んでいただきました。★⁴®</u> Kare ha sensei ni sono nihongo no tegami wo yondeitadakimashita. The teacher read the Japanese letter for him.						
<u>わたし</u> かのじょ <u>わたし</u> だいす <u>きょく</u> うた 5. <u>私 は 彼女 に 私 の 大好きな 曲 を 歌ってもらいました。 Watashi ha kanojo ni watashi no dai suki na kyoku wo utattemoraimashita. She sang my favorite song for me.</u>						
6. みさ 先	せい 注生 は あけみさん カ ensei ha akemi-san kara ra	nら <u>ランチ を</u> 1	く 乍 ってもらいました oraimashita.	0		

Akemi made lunch for Misa.

<u>わたし</u> <u>とも</u> <u>ながさき</u>

7. <u>私 は 友だちに 長崎 を あんない してもらい</u>ました。

Watashi ha tomodachi ni nagasaki wo annai shitemoraimashita.

My friend showed me around Nagasaki.

かのじょ

8. 彼女 は ツアーガイド に 写真 を とってもらった。

Kanojo ha tsuaagaido ni shashin wo tottemoratta.

The tour guide took her picture for her.

<u>わたし</u> <u>にほんじん</u> <u>とも</u> <u>わたし</u>

9. <u>私 は 日本人 の 友 だち に 私 の スピーチ を チェック してもらい</u>ます。

Watashi ha nihonjin no tomodachi ni watashi no supiichi wo chekku shitemoraimasu.

My Japanese friend will check my speech for me.

Some guy's pro tip #47:

かのじょ

In addition to 'she,' the word 「 彼女 」 can also take on the meaning of 'girlfriend.' 'Boyfriend,' かれし かれ

however, is \lceil 彼氏 \rfloor (not \lceil 彼 \rfloor). Of course, as you might have imagined, both words can also be expressed in Katakana:

Girlfriend $\rightarrow \dot{\pi} - \nu \tau \nu \nu \nu$

Boyfriend $\rightarrow \pi - 17 \nu \nu \nu$

Some guy's pro tip #48:

頂 く.] When the doer of the action is socially higher than the speaker, it is customary to use $\lceil \sim$ いただ

て 頂 く」instead of $\lceil \sim 7$ もらう」to express proper respect.

Now let's look at some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks with the given verbs in their properly conjugated polite $\tau \in \delta$ -forms.

わたし かのじょ つく
Ex. 私 は 彼女 に ランチ を 作ってもらいました 。 (作る)
Watashi ha kanojo ni ranchi wo tsukuttemoraimashita . (tsukuru)

She made lunch for me.

Let's check out some example conjugations:

わたし せんせい すうがく	おし
1. 私 は 先生 に 数学 を。	(教 える)
Watashi ha sensei ni suugaku wo (oshi	eru)
The teacher is teaching me math.	
かれ かれ か	
2. 彼 は 彼 から これ を。(買う)	
Kare ha kare kara kore wo (kau)	
He bought this for him.	
かのじょ かれ つく	
3. 彼女 は 彼 に これ を。 (作	3)
Kanojo ha kare ni kore wo (tsukuru)	3)
He made this for her.	
わたし とも わたし す うた	うた
4. 私 は 友 だち から 私 が 好き な 歌 を Watashi ha tomodachi kara watashi ga suki na uta wo	。(叭)) (utau)
My friend sang the song I like for me.	(utau)
wiy friend sung the song i like for me.	
わたし かれ でんき け	
5. 私 は 彼 に 電気 を。(消す)
Watashi ha kare ni denki wo (kesu)	
He turned off the lights for me.	
わたし にほんじん とも	
6. 私 の 日本人 の 友 だち に レポート を チェック	
。 (する)	
Watashi no nihonjin no tomodachi ni repooto wo chekku	(suru)
My Japanese friends check my reports for me.	(5414)
Finally, let's take a look at $\lceil \sim$ てくれる.]	
	わたし
As we already know, $\lceil \langle h \rangle \rangle$ is the verb we use when someone does something for	r「私,」and
can be translated as 'give me.'	
Our conjugation works the same as we saw with $\lceil \sim \rceil$ and $\lceil \sim \rceil$ to \rceil .	We simply
conjugate our verb to its \mathcal{T} -form and add $[\langle h \delta.]]$	2p.1 <i>j</i>

Dictionary form		<u>T-form</u>		<u>~てくれる</u>
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買って	\rightarrow	買ってくれる (to buy for me)
つく 作 る (to make)	\rightarrow	作って	\rightarrow	作ってくれる (to make for me)
か 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	書いて	\rightarrow	書いてくれる (to write for me)
おし 教 える (to teach)	\rightarrow	教えて	\rightarrow	教えてくれる (to teach for me)
ひら 開く (to open)	\rightarrow	開いて	\rightarrow	開いてくれる (to open for me)
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読んで	\rightarrow	読んでくれる (to read for me)
する (to do)	\rightarrow	して	\rightarrow	してくれる (to do for me)

Try some yourself:

Dictionary form		<u>T-form</u>		<u>~てくれる</u>
き 1. 聞く (to listen)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
そそ 2. 注ぐ (to pour)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
の 3. 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
し 4. 閉める (to close)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
も 5. 持つ (to hold)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
ま 6. 待つ (to wait)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

The structure for our sentences will look something like this:

Subject		Recipient		Object		<u>Verb</u>
<u>彼/彼女</u> あなた	<u>は/が</u>	<u>私</u>	<u>12</u>	[object]	<u>*</u>	[てくれる]
<u>u) & 7C</u>					わたし	,

We can see that we use $\lceil \sim 7 \leq h \leq \rfloor$ when the recipient of an action is $\lceil k \rceil = 1$.

It is also worth noting that when $\lceil \sim \tau \langle h \delta \rfloor$ is used, $\lceil \lambda \rangle$ に is often omitted because it isn't necessary. Remember, the verb 「くれる」 means 'give me' or 'do for me.' Since 'me' is included in the meaning of the verb itself, it is redundant to say 「私.」 Of course, it isn't wrong to say it, but in most cases you will find that is left out of the sentence. In the following example sentences $\lceil \sim 7 \rfloor \uparrow \hbar$ る」 will be put in parentheses to show this.

Now let's check out some example sentences:

- かのじょ が (私 に) これ を 作 ってくれた。*⁴⁹ 1. Kanojo ga watashi ni kore wo tsukuttekureta.
 - She made this for me.
- 2. いずみさん が (私 に) これ を 書いてくれました。 * ⁵⁰

Izumi-san ga (watashi ni) kore wo kaitekuremashita. Izumi wrote this for me.

わたし 私 に)プレゼント を 買ってくれます。

Kare ha (watashi ni) purezento wo kattekuremasu. He'll buy a present for me.

- かんじ かのじょ
- 私 に)この 漢字 の 読み 方 を 教えてくれた。 4. Kanojo ga watashi ni kono kanji no yomikata wo oshietekureta.

She taught me how to read this Kanji.

を してくれた。 *⁵¹

Ryou-kun ga watashi no shukudai wo shitekureta.

Ryou did my homework for me.

<u>せんせい</u> <u>わたし</u> <u>おし</u>

6. <u>先生 が (私 に) これ を</u> 教 <u>えてくださいました</u>。 $\underline{\star}^{52}$

Sensei ga watashi ni kore wo oshietekudasaimashita.

The teacher taught this to me.

Some guy's pro tip #49:

The informal form of $\lceil \sim \tau \langle h \delta \rfloor$ is $\lceil \sim \tau \langle h \xi \rangle$.

Some guy's pro tip #50:

わたし

Often times when using $\lceil \sim \tau \langle h \delta, \rfloor \lceil \delta \rangle$ に \rfloor is omitted.

Some guy's pro tip #51:

 $\lceil \langle \lambda \rfloor$ is an honorific that is usually appended to the names of males that are younger or the same age as the speaker.

The female equivalent of $\lceil \langle \lambda \rangle$ is $\lceil 5 * \lambda \rangle$.

In formal situations, however, it may be better to use $[\grave{\delta} \& \lambda]$ to avoid being seen as impolite.

Some guy's pro tip #52:

「 \sim てくださる」 is the formal form of 「 \sim てくれる」 and should be used in situations where the doer of the action is in a higher social position.

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Using the polite form, fill in the blanks with the given verbs in their correct $\tau \leq \hbar$ 3-form:

かあ わたし つく
Ex. お 母 さん が 私 に ランチ を 作ってくれました 。 (作 る)
Okaasan ga watashi ni ranchi wo tsukuttekuremashita . (tsukuru)
Mom made lunch for me.

	とも わたし えん	か			
1.	友 だち が 私 に 2000 円 を。	(貸す)			
	Tomodachi ga watashi ni 2000 en wo				
	My friend lent me 2000 yen.	_ ()			
	かれ わたし じゅうしょ	か			
2.	彼 が 私 の 住所 を。	(書く)			
2.	Kare ga watashi no juusho wo				
	He wrote my address for me.	(KuKu)			
	The wrote my address for me.				
	わたし				
3		(オス)			
3.	あきこさん が 私 に それ を。	(9 0)			
	Akiko-san ga watashi ni sore woAkiko will do it for me.	(Suru)			
	Ariko wili do it ioi ilie.				
	かあ				
4		3)			
4.	お 母 さん が これ を。(買う))			
	Okaasan ga kore wo (kau)				
	Mom bought this for me.				
	かれ				
~					
5.	彼 が これ を。(読む)				
	Kare ga kore wo				
	He read this for me.				
Chant	ter Summary:				
Спарс	Ci Summary.				
Let's s	ee what we learned in this chapter:				
•	We use $\lceil \sim \tau$ by $\lceil \sim \tau$ by when an action is done for the benefit of someone else				
	わたし				
_					
•	When using 「~てあげる,」 the receiver of the action cannot be 「私」				
•	「 \sim てやる」is the casual form of $\lceil \sim$ てあげる」	, ,			
•	The verbs $\lceil $ あげる \rfloor in $\lceil \sim$ てあげる \rfloor \lceil もらう \rfloor in $\lceil \sim$ てもらう \rfloor and \lceil くれ				
	る」in「 \sim てくれる」can be conjugated like any Type II verb				
•	$\lceil \sim 7 \notin 6 \circlearrowleft \rfloor$ is used to show that an action was done for the benefit of someon	ie else			
•	When using $\lceil \sim \tau + \beta \rangle$ the doer of the action is marked with $\lceil \mathcal{U} \rfloor$ or $\lceil \mathcal{D} \rangle$	à]			
•	The polite version of「あげる」is「さしあげる」				
	いただ				
•	The polite version of「もらう」is「 項 〈」				
	-				
•	The polite version of「くれる」is「くださる」				
	わたし				
•	「~てくれる」 is used when an action is done for 「 私 」				
	わたし				
•	When the recipient of something is \lceil 私 \rfloor in a sentence using $\lceil \sim \tau $ くれる,	l the subject,			
	along with the particle $\lceil \mathcal{C}, \rfloor$ can be omitted.				

Chapter 35: Describing desires with 「~たい」

Let's take a look at some example conjugations. Again, all we do is just append $\lceil t \mid l \mid \rceil$ or $\lceil t \mid l \mid \rceil$ or $\lceil t \mid l \mid \rceil$ to the $\sharp t$ -stem of our verb. This works for all Type I, II, and III verbs.

Let's take a quick look at some example verbs in this form:

Dictionary form	<u>ます-stem</u>	<u>~たい/たがる</u>
た 食べる (to eat) →	食べ ます →	食べたい/食べたがる (to want to eat)
の 飲む (to drink) →	飲み ます →	飲みたい/飲みたがる (to want to drink)
い 行く (to go) -	行き ます →	行きたい/行きたがる (to want to go)
	き 来 ます →	き 来たい/来たがる (to want to come)
い 言う (to say) -	言い ます →	言いたい/言いたがる (to want to say)
かんが 考 える (to think)→	考え ます →	考えたい/考えたがる (to want to think)
こた 答 える (to answer)→	答え ます →	答えたい/答えたがる (to want to answer)

Try some on your own. Conjugate the following verbs to their たい and たがる-forms.

Dictionary form	<u>ます-stem</u>	<u>たい-form</u>	<u>たがる-form</u>
おど 1. 踊 る (to dance)			
うた 2. 歌 う (to sing)			

	な 3. 泣く (to cry)				
	み 4. 見る (to watch)				
	か 5.買う (to buy)				
	つく 6. 作 る (to make)				
	お 7. 落とす (to drop)				
Now le	et's take a look at some	e example sentences u	sing our new s	tructure.	
Our se	ntence structure will le	ook like this:			
Subjec	<u>t</u>	Object		Verb	
<u>彼</u> 彼女 あなた	<u>u</u>	[object]	<u>を/が/に</u>	[<u>ます-stem +たい/たがる</u>]	
1.	<u>わたし</u> <u>私 は すしを</u> <u>Watashi ha sushi</u> I want to eat sush				
<u>わたし</u> 2. <u>私 は ストロベリー アイスクリーム が 食べたい です。</u> Watashi ha sutoroberii aisukuriimu ga tabetai desu I want to eat strawberry icecream.					
3.	かのじょ えいた 彼女 は 映画 Kanojo ha eiga w She wants to see	<u>を</u> 見たがる。 o mitagaru.			
4.	あやこさん は	んがく き 音楽 を 聞きたが gaku wo kikitagarimas listen to music.			

5. <u>私 は その 質問 に 答 えたい です</u>。

Watashi ha sono shitsumon ni kotaetai desu.

I want to answer that question.

6. <u>私</u> <u>は</u> <u>アメリカ に</u> 行きたい です。

Watashi ha amerika ni ikitai desu.

I want to go to America.

7. 私 は ジュースを 飲みたい です。

Watashi ha juusu wo nomitai desu.

I want to drink juice.

It is important to understand and keep in mind that when a verb is appended with $\lceil tz \lor \cdot, \rfloor$ that while it is still a verb, we can conjugate it like we do our $\lor \cdot$ -adjectives. As such, many things we can do with an $\lor \cdot$ -adjective, we can also do with our $tz \lor \cdot$ -form verbs.

For instance, we can conjugate them to the past tense. $\lceil \sim t \rceil$ simply becomes $\lceil \sim t \rceil$.

Let's look at some examples:

1. \underline{A} <u>は</u> アメリカ に 行きたかった です。

Watashi ha amerika ni ikitakatta desu.

I wanted to go to America.

2. <u>私 は その 本 を</u> 読みたかった です。

Watashi ha sono hon wo yomitakatta desu.

I wanted to read that book.

3. $\underline{\mathbf{A}}$ <u> $\underline{\mathbf{b}}$ <u> $\underline{\mathbf{b}}$ </u> .</u></u></u></u>

Watashi ha atarashii kuruma wo kaitakatta desu.

I wanted to buy a new car.

We can also use verbs in the to to describe nouns:

a book that I want to read

a movie that I want to see

And of course, we can also conjugate them to the ない-form:

The same also applies to verbs written in their たがる-forms. They act like regular Type I verbs.

For instance, we can conjugate them to the past tense. $\lceil \sim t \, \text{\it in} \, \delta \rfloor$ simply becomes $\lceil \sim t \, \text{\it in} \, \delta \rfloor$ to $\lceil \sim t$

Let's look at some examples:

2. 彼女 は その 本 を 読みたがりました。
Kanojo ha sono hon wo yomitagarimashita.
She wanted to read that book.

$$\frac{\underline{b}}{\underline{b}}$$
 \underline{b} \underline{b} \underline{b} 3. お $\underline{\zeta}$ さん は 新 しい 車 を 買いたがりました。

Otousan ha atarashii kuruma wo kaitagarimashita. Dad wanted to buy a new car.

We can also use verbs in the たがる-forms to describe nouns:

And of course, we can also conjugate them to the ない-form:

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks with the correct conju	ugation of the	given verbs.
---	----------------	--------------

Ex. I want to go to America.

Watashi ha amerika ni <u>ikitai</u> desu. (iku)

Ex. She wants to go to America.

Kanojo ha amerika ni <u>ikitagarimasu</u>. (iku)

1. I don't want to eat sushi.

Watashi ha sushi wo ______desu. (taberu)

2. This is a game I want to buy.

Kore ha watashi ga _____ geemu desu. (kau)

3. There are no movies he wants to watch.

Kare ga ______eiga ha nai desu. (miru)

4. I wanted to swim.

Watashi ha desu. (oyogu)

5.	They want to come to Japan.	
	かれ にほん 彼らは 日本 に	く 。(来る)
	Karera ha nihon ni	(kuru)
6.	She wants to dance with me.	
	かのじょ わたし 彼女 は 私 と	おど 。(踊 る)
	Kanojo ha watashi to	(odoru)
7.	I want to study English.	
	わたし えいご べんきょ 私 は 英語 を 勉強	: う です。(する)
	Watashi ha eigo wo benkyou	desu. (suru)
8.	I don't want to study English.	
	わたし えいご べんきょ 私 は 英語 を 勉強	: う です。(する)
	Watashi ha eigo wo benkyou	desu . (suru)
9.	I wanted to study English.	
	わたし えいご べんきょ 私 は 英語 を 勉強	
	Watashi ha eigo wo benkyou	desu . (suru)
10.	. I didn't want to study English.	
	わたし えいご べんきょ 私 は 英語 を 勉強	: う です。(する)
	Watashi ha eigo wo benkyou	desu . (suru)
11.	. He doesn't want to go home.	
	かれ 彼 は	かえ です。(帰 る)
	Kare ha	

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- To communicate our own desires, we append 「たい」 to the ます-stem of our verb
- We use $\lceil \sim$ たがる」 to communicate the desires of others
- To make a sentence polite using $\lceil \sim t \rangle$, we include $\lceil c t \rfloor$ at the end
- The formal past tense form of $\lceil \sim t \, \text{nis} \, \lceil \sim t \, \text{nis} \, \lceil \sim t \, \text{nis} \, \rceil$
- The informal past tense form of $\lceil \sim t \, \vec{n} \, \vec{s} \rfloor$ is $\lceil \sim t \, \vec{n} \, \vec{s} \rfloor$

Chapter 36: Describing methods with 「~方」

Next, we're going to take a look at how to talk about the way to do something.

かた

The construction of this grammar structure is very easy; we simply append $\lceil \dot{\pi} \rfloor$ to the $\sharp \dot{\tau}$ -stem of our verb.

When we do this, we basically get what amounts to 'how to \sim ' in English. And this makes a lot of sense,

because the Kanji 「 方 」 literally means 'way' or 'how to.'

かかたかたかた

If we take the verb for 'to write,' 「書く,」 and conjugate it to the 方 -form, we end up with 「書きかた

「読む,」we end up with 「読み 方,」which can be thought of as meaning 'how to read.'

かた

Let's practice constructing a few verbs in the $\dot{\mathcal{T}}$ -form. The nice thing is, this conjugation works exactly the same for Type I, II, and III verbs, so we don't have to worry about remembering any specific conjugation pattern for any particular verb type.

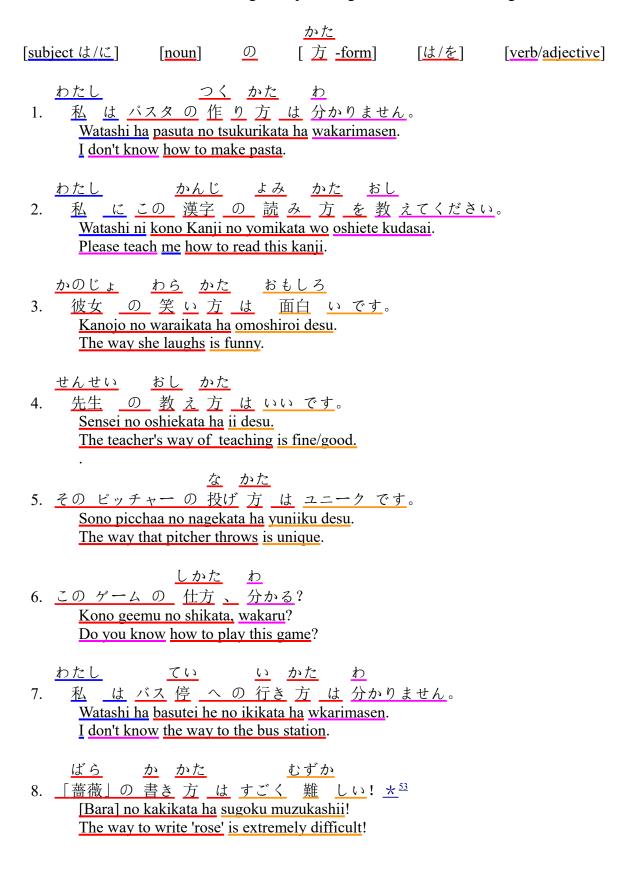
Dictionary form	<u>ます-form</u>	<u>かた</u> 方 <u>-form</u>
する (to do) →	し ます →	し 仕方 (the way/how to do)
た 食べる (to eat) →	たべ ます →	食べ方 (the way/how to eat)
かんが 考 える (to think)→	考え ます →	考え方 (the way/how to think)
おぼ 覚 える (to learn)→	覚え ます →	覚え方 (the way/how to learn)
はな 話 す (to speak) →	話し ます →	話し方 (the way/how to speak)
わら 笑 う (to laugh) →	笑い ます →	笑い方 (the way/how to laugh)

Now try a few on your own:

Dictionary form	<u>ます-form</u>	<u>かた</u> 方 <u>-form</u>	
か			
1. 書〈 (to write) →		→	
き 2. 聞く (to listen) →		→	
およ 3. 泳ぐ (to swim) →		→	
おど 4. 踊 る (to dance) →		→	
な 5. 投げる (to throw) →			
6. あげる (to give) \rightarrow		→	
ょ 7. 読む(to read) →		→	
ある 8. 歩く (to walk) →		→	
た 9. 立つ (to stand) \rightarrow		→	
かんが 10. 考 える (to think)	→	<i>-</i>	
の 11. 飲む (to drink) →		→	

Now let's dive into some example sentences to help us get a better understanding of just how it works.

The sentence structure we'll be looking at is quite long, but will look something like this:



Some guy's pro tip #53:

ばら

If you really want to impress your friends, learn how to write「薔薇.」

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

かた

- Appending 「 方 」 to the ます-stem works for all Type I, II and III verbs かた
- When $\lceil \dot{\pi} \rfloor$ is appended to the $\sharp \dot{\tau}$ -stem of a verb, it takes on the meaning of 'how to [verb,]' or 'the way to [verb]'

ばら

• If you can learn to write「薔薇,」you can impress a lot of people

かたしかた

• When we append 「 方 」 to the ~ます-form of 「する,」it becomes 「 仕方 」 not 「しかた 方 」

Chapter 37: Describing our thoughts and feelings with「と 思う」

おも

The verb 「 思 う」 can be translated as 'to think' or 'to feel.' Whenever we don't know something with

certainty, or we just want to express our thoughts or feelings, we can use 「と 思う」 to do it.

おも

Using 「と 思 う」 can be a little tricky, though. If 「と 思 う」 follows a <u>noun</u>, we need to place 「だ」between that noun and 「と 思う:」

おも

Ex. これ は サーモン だ と 思 う。

Kore ha saamon da to omou.

I think this is salmon.

おも

おも

おも

Likewise, if 「と 思 う」follows a な-adjective, we need to place 「だ」between it and 「と 思 う:」

ろめんでんしゃ おも

は便利だと思います。 路面電車 Ex.

Romendensha ha benri da to omoimasu.

I think the street car is convenient/useful.

おも

If, however, an <u>い-adjective</u> or a <u>verb</u> is followed by 「と 思う,」we do *not* need 「だ:」

おい おも

Ex. すし は美味しい と 思 う。

Sushi ha oishii to omou.

I think sushi is good.

わたし くるま あたら おも か

新しい 車 を買うと思います。

Watashi ha atarashii kuruma wo kau to omoimasu.

I think I will buy a new car.

Let's take a look at some example sentences.

Our sentence structure will look something like this:

[subject] は/が [noun] だ と 思う [\underline{x} -adjective] た と 思う [\underline{y} -adjective] と 思う [\underline{y} -erb] と 思う

かれ こ おも

1. 彼はパーティーに来ないと思う。

Kare ha paatii ni konai to omou.

I don't think he will come to the party.

<u>かのじょ</u> <u>ほん</u> おも : 彼女 の 本 だ と 思 う。

2. これは 彼女 の 本 だと 思う

Kore ha kanojo no hon da to omou. This is her book, I think.

えいが おもしろ おも

3. その 映画 は 面白 いと思います。

Sono eiga ha omoshiroi to omoimasu.

I think that movie is cool/interesting.

かのじょ りょうり おい おも

4. 彼女 は その レストラン の 料理 が 美味しい と 思 っています。

Kanojo ha sono resutoran no ryouri ga oishii to omotteimasu.

She thinks that restaurant is good.

にほん さいこう おも

5. 日本 は <u>最高</u> だ と 思 う!

Nihon ha saikou da to omou!

I think Japan is the best!

おもしろ おも

6. この マンガ は あんまり 面白 くない と 思 う。

Kono manga ha anmari omoshirokunai to omou.

I don't think this comic is very good.

おも

7. あなた の アイデア は いい と 思 います。

Anata no aidea ha ii to omoimasu.

I think your idea is good.

かれ おも 8. 彼 は パーティー に 来ない と 思 いました。 Kare ha paatii ni konai to omoimashita. I didn't think he was coming to the party. にほんご たの おも 9. 日本語 は 楽 しい と 思 います! Nihongo ha tanoshii to omoimasu! I think Japanese is fun! かんじ おも かんたん 10. 漢字 は 簡単だと思う。 Kanji ha kantan da to omou. I think Kanji is easy. かれ わたし たおも 私 の ランチ を 食べた と 思 います。 11. 彼 が

Kare ga watashi no ranchi wo tabeta to omoimasu. I think he ate my lunch.

かれ じん おも

12. 彼 は アメリカ 人 だと 思う。

Kare ha amerika jin da to omou.

He's American, I think.

Another thing we have to be careful of, is when we are talking about what *other* people think or feel.

わたし おも

When the subject is 「 私 ,」we can use 「と 思 う」as is. However, if the subject is someone おも

else, we need to conjugate 「思う」 to its ている-form; 「思っている.」 Let's take a quick look at some examples:

えいご わたし かんたん

簡単だと思います。 私 は 英語 が Ex.

Watashi ha eigo ga kantan da to omoimasu.

I think English is easy.

えいご かんたん おも

簡単 Ex. あきこさん は 英語 が だと思っている。

Akiko-san ha eigo ga kantan da to omotteiru.

Akiko thinks English is easy.

わたし おもしろ おも

はマンガが 面白 いと 思います。

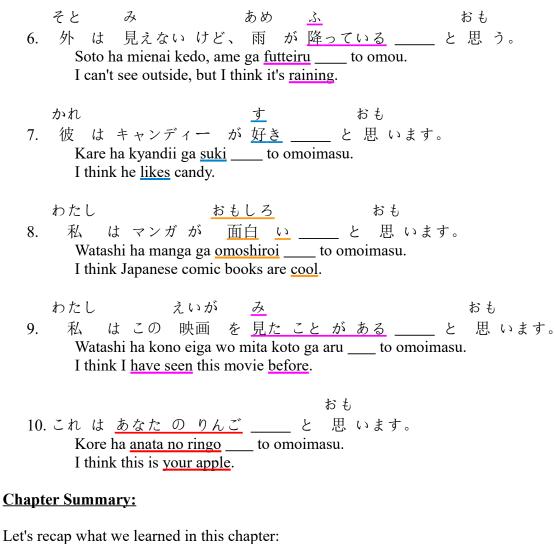
Watashi ha manga ga omoshiroi to omoimasu.

I think comic books are cool.

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Read the following sentences and fill in the blanks with $\lceil \mathcal{E} \rfloor$ if its necessary, or an 'X' if $\lceil \mathcal{E} \rfloor$ is not needed:



おも

- We can use 「と 思う」 when we want to express that we think or feel a certain way
- When we want to talk about others thoughts or feelings we use 「と 思っている」
- When used in conjunction with a noun or \mathcal{Z} -adjective, we need $[\mathcal{Z}]$ before appending $[\mathcal{Z}]$ おも 思 う|
- When used in conjunction with an い-adjective or verb, we don't need 「だ」 before おも appending「と 思う」

Chapter 38: The conditional form with 「~たら」

Now we're getting into the good stuff (I hope you're excited!). This grammar structure is very similar to the conditionals 'if' and 'when' of English. What's really nice about $\lceil \sim \not \sim \not \sim \not \sim , \rfloor$ though, is that it's very versatile. Not only can we use it on verbs, but we can also apply it to our $\ \ \sim \ \sim \ \sim \ \sim \ \sim \ \sim \ \sim \ \sim \ \ \sim \ \ \sim \$

This will be a lot easier if you're comfortable with conjugating to the informal past tense (to-form). If you need a little refresher, please go back to chapter 20 and review a little bit before proceeding. I'll wait...

Good to go? Great!

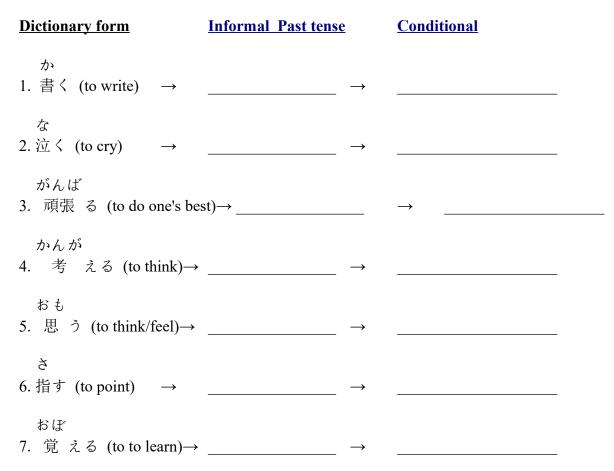
First, let's take a look at its construction. To conjugate to the conditional form, all we have to do is append $\lceil \dot{\beta} \rfloor$ to the informal past tense form of our verb, adjective, or noun. Let's take a look at some example conjugations. We'll start with our verbs.

Verbs:

Dictionary form		Informal Pa	<u>st tense</u>	Conditional
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べた	\rightarrow	食べたら (if/when [subject] eats)
み 見る (to see/watch)	\rightarrow	見た	\rightarrow	見たら (if/when [subject] sees/watches)
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買った	\rightarrow	買ったら (if/when [subject] buys)
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読んだ	\rightarrow	読んだら (if [subject] reads)
する (to do)	\rightarrow	した	\rightarrow	したら (if/when [subject] does)
と 飛ぶ (to fly)	\rightarrow	飛んだ	\rightarrow	飛んだら (if/when [subject] flies)
く 来る (to come)	\rightarrow	き 来た	\rightarrow	き 来たら (if/when [subject] comes)
し 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow	死んだ	\rightarrow	死んだら (if/when [subject] dies)

ある (to be/exist) \rightarrow あった \rightarrow あったら (if/when [subject] is/exists)

Try conjugating a few on your own:



Now let's take a look at some example sentences. The verb phrases will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>.

<u>じかん</u> ばんごはん つく 1. <u>もし 時間 が あったら</u> 晩御飯 を 作 りたい です。<u>*</u>⁴ <u>Moshi jikan ga attara</u> bangohan wo tsukuritai desu.

<u>としょかん</u> <u>い</u> し 2. 図書館 <u>に 行ったら</u> 閉まっていました。 <u>Toshokan ni ittara</u> shimatteimashita. When I went to the library, it was closed.

If I have time, I want to cook dinner.

しごと お いえ かえ

3. <u>仕事 が 終わったら</u>家 に 帰 ります。

<u>Shigoto ga owattara</u> ie ni kaerimasu.

<u>When work is over I'll go home.</u>

- <u>あめ</u> <u>ふ</u> さんぽ
- 4. <u>もし</u> <u>雨</u> <u>が降らなかったら</u> 散歩 します。 Moshi ame ga furanakattara sanpo shimasu.

If it doesn't rain, I'll take a walk.

た げんき

5. ごはん を 食べたら 元気 に なりました。

Gohan wo tabetara genki ni narimashita.

When I ate, I felt better.

さいふ あ かね

6. 財布 を 開けたら お 金 が なかった!

Saifu wo aketara okane ga nakatta!

When I opened my wallet, there was no money!

ごうかく

7. <u>あなた は ちゃんと 勉強したら</u>、 合格 する よ。

Anata ha chanto benkyou shitara, goukaku suru yo.

If you study hard, you'll pass.

Some guy's pro tip #54:

When $\lceil \sim t \nmid S \rfloor$ is used like 'if,' you will often see sentences begin with $\lceil \nmid \downarrow \downarrow \rfloor$. It isn't necessary, but sometimes you may see it.

43-adjectives:

Dictionary form	Informal Past tense	Conditional
やす 安 い →	安かった →	安かったら (if [subject] is cheap)
きび 厳 しい →	厳しかった →	厳しかったら (if [subject] is strict)
おも 重 い →	重かった →	重かったら (if [subject] heavy)
おそ 遅 い →	遅かった →	遅かったら (if [subject] slow)
<i>()()</i> →	よ 良かった →	よ 良かったら (if[subject]good <u>)*</u> 55

Some guy's pro tip #55:

ょ

When conjugating 「いい,」we use 「良い」 as the base. We **do not** say 「いかたら.」

Try a few on your own:

Dictionary form	Informal Past tense	Conditional
たか 1. 高い (expensive)→	<i>→</i>	
つよ 2. 強い (strong) →	→	
ねむ 3. 眠い (sleepy) →	→	
よわ 4. 弱い (weak) →	<i>→</i>	

Now let's take a look at some example sentences. The 43-adjectives and the object they modify are highlighted in orange.

あした てんき ょ つ い

1. 明日 , 天気 が 良かったら、釣り に 行きます。

Ashita, tenki ga yokattara, tsuri ni ikimasu. If the weather is nice tomorrow, I'll go fishing.

わたし <u>あたら</u> たか か

2. 私 は 新 しい ゲーム が 高 かったら 買わない です。

Watashi ha <u>atarashii geemu ga takakattara</u> kawanai desu.

I won't buy the new game if it's expensive.

<u>さむ</u> うわぎ き

3. 寒 かったら 上着 を 着た ほう が いい です。

Samukattara uwagi wo kita hou ga ii desu.

If it's cold, you should wear a jacket.

<u>むずか</u> てつだ

4. <u>難しかったら</u> 手伝 ってあげる よ。

Muzukashikattara tetsudatte ageru yo.

If it's hard, I'll help you.

5. <u>眠かったら</u> コーヒー を 入れて あげる よ。
<u>Nemukattara</u> koohii wo irete ageru yo.
<u>If you're sleepy</u>, I'll make some coffee for you.

な-adjectives:

Try a few on your own:

Dictionary form	Informal Past tense	Conditional
ふべん 1. 不便 (inconvenient) →	<i>→</i>	
だいじ 2. 大事 (important) →	→	
たいへん 3. 大変 (dreadful) →	→	
へん 4. 変 (strange) →	\rightarrow	

Now let's take a look at some example sentences. The な-adjectives are highlighted in blue.

わたし <u>げんき</u> い 1. 私 は 元気 だったら ジム に 行きます。 Watashi ha <u>genki dattara</u> jimu ni ikimasu. If I feel good, I will go to the gym. きょう しごと ひま はや かえ

2. 今日 、 仕事 が $\underline{\mathbf{w}}$ <u>だったら</u> 早 く 帰 ります。

Kyou, shitogoto ga <u>hima dattara</u> hayaku kaerimasu. <u>If work isn't busy</u> today, I'll go home early.

けいたいでんわ わたし けいたいでんわ べんり か

3. その 携帯 電話 が 私 の(携帯 電話) より 便利 だったら 買います。 Sono keitaidenwa ga watashi no (keitai denwa) yori <u>benri dattara</u> kaimasu. If that phone is <u>more useful</u> than my phone, I'll buy it.

にく あじ へん た

4. その 肉 の 味 が <u>変</u> <u>だったら</u>、食べない ほう が いい です よ。 Sono niku no aji ga <u>hen dattara</u>, tabenai hou ga ii desu yo.

If that meat tastes strange, you shouldn't eat it.

Nouns:

Noun	Inform	nal Past tense		Conditional
がくせい 学生 (student)	\rightarrow	学生だった	\rightarrow	学生だったら (if [subject] is a student)
おとな 大人 (adult)	\rightarrow	大人だった	\rightarrow	大人だったら (if [subject] is an adult)
みず 水 (water)	\rightarrow	水だった	\rightarrow	水だったら (if [subject] is water)
みどり 緑 (green)	\rightarrow	緑だった	\rightarrow	緑だったら (if [subject] is green)

Try a few on your own:

<u>Noun</u>		Informal Past tense	Conditional
1. ピンク (pink)	\rightarrow	<i>→</i>	
こ 2.子ども (child)	\rightarrow	→	
3. すし (sushi)	\rightarrow	<i>→</i>	
4. マンガ (comics)	\rightarrow		

Let's take a look at some example sentences. The nouns are highlighted in red:

1. <u>学生</u> <u>だったら</u> にゅうじょうりょう は 1000 円 です。

<u>Gakusei dattara</u> nyuujouryou ha sen en desu. <u>If you're a student</u>, the admission fee is a thousand yen.

2. 大人 だったら にゅうじょうりょう は 2000 円 です。

Otona dattara nyuujouryou ha 2000 en desu.

If you're an adult, the admission fee is 2000 yen.

3. スーツが 緑 だったら 着ないです。

Suutsu ga midori dattara kinai desu.

If the suit is green, I won't wear it.

Of course, we mustn't forget our *negative* conditionals.

Naturally, we can also apply this structure to our verb/ \wp -adjective/ α -adjective/noun's negative form. To do this, we simply drop $\lceil \alpha \wp \rceil$ from the $\alpha \wp$ -form and add $\lceil \alpha \wp \rceil \gtrsim .$

Verbs:

Dictionary form		<u>ない-form</u>		Negative conditional
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べ ない	\rightarrow	食べなかったら (if [subject] doesn't eat)
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買わ ない	\rightarrow	買わなかったら (if [subject] doesn't buy)
する (to do)	\rightarrow	l ない	\rightarrow	しなかったら (if [subject] doesn't do)
く 来る (to come)	\rightarrow	こ 来 ない	\rightarrow	こ 来なかったら (if [subject] doesn't come)
ある (to exist)	\rightarrow	/(1)	\rightarrow	なかったら (if [subject] doesn't exist)

Try conjugating the example verbs from above to their negative forms:

Dictionary form	<u>ない-form</u>	Negative conditional
か 1. 書く (to write)	→	→
な 2. 泣く (to cry)	→	→
かんが 3. 考 える (to think)	→	→
おも 4. 思う (to think/feel)	→	→
さ 5. 指す (to point)	→	→
おぼ 6. 覚 える (to point)	→	→

Let's check out some example sentences. The verbs are highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

あめ <u>ふ</u> さんぽ

1. 雨 が 降らなかったら 散歩 します。

Ame ga <u>furanakattara</u> sanpo shimasu.

If it doesn't rain, I'll take a walk.

じかん

2. 時間が なかったら ばんごはん を 作れないです。

Jikan ga <u>nakattara</u> ban gohan wo tsukurenai desu.

If there's no time, I can't cook dinner.

おもしろ おも

3. 21 さい 以上 <u>でなかったら</u> ラスベガス は 面白 くない と 思 います。

21 sai <u>denakattara</u> rasubegasu ha omoshirokunai to omoimasu.

If you're not 21, I don't think Las Vegas is very fun.

<u>こ</u> な

4. あなた が <u>来なかったら</u>、泣きます ょ。

Anata ga konakattara, nakimasu yo.

If you don't come, I'll cry.

41-adjectives:

Dictionary form	<u>ない-form</u>	Negative conditional
やす 安い (cheap)	→ 安く ない	→ 安くなかったら (if [subject] isn't cheap)
さむ 寒 い (cold)	→ 寒く ない	→ 寒くなかったら (if [subject] isn't cold)
やさ 優しい (nice)	→ 優しく ない	→ 優しくなかったら (if [subject] isn't nice)
おい 美味しい (tasty)	→ 美味しく ない	→ 美味しくなかったら (if [subject] isn't tasty)
かた 固 い (hard)	→ 固く ない	→ 固くなかったら (if [subject] isn't hard)

Try conjugating the example 43-adjectives from above to their negative forms:

Dictionary form		ない-form		Negative conditional
たか 1. 高い (expensive)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
つよ 2. 強い (strong)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
ねむ 3. 眠い (sleepy)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
きたな 4. 汚 い (dirty)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

Now let' stake a look at some example sentences:

あした てんき よ つ い 1. 明日 , 天気 が <u>良くなかったら</u> 釣り に 行きません。 Ashita, tenki ga <u>yokunakattara</u> tsuri ni ikimasen. If the weather <u>isn't nice</u> tomorrow, I won't go fishing.

わたし あたら <u>たか</u> か 2. 私 は 新 しい ゲーム が <u>高 かくなかったら</u> 買います。 Watashi ha atarashii geemu ga <u>takakunakattara</u> kaimasu. I will buy the new game if it's not expensive.

3. <u>寒</u> <u>かくなっかたら</u> うわぎ を 着ない ほう が いい です。 <u>Samukunakattara</u> uwagi wo kinai hou ga ii desu.

If you're not cold, you shouldn't wear a jacket.

むずかてつだ

4. <u>難 しくなかったら</u> 手伝 ってあげる よ。 <u>Muzukashikunakattara</u> tetsudatte ageru yo.

If it's not hard, I'll help you.

We have to be a little careful with our nouns and α -adjectives, however. To make the negative conditional, in addition to $\lceil \alpha \iota_{3} \rceil$, we must also drop the $\lceil \iota \sharp \rfloor$ from the $\alpha \iota_{3}$ -form.

Nouns:

Dictionary form		ない-form		Negative conditional		
せいと 生徒 (student)	\rightarrow	生徒で はない	\rightarrow	生徒でなかったら (if [subject] isn't a student)		
ほん 本 (book)	\rightarrow	本で はない	\rightarrow	本でなかったら (if [subject] isn't a book)		
ひと 人 (person)	\rightarrow	人で はない	\rightarrow	人でなかったら (if [subject] isn't a person)		
ともだち 友達 (friend)	\rightarrow	友達で はない	\rightarrow	友達でなかったら (if [subject] isn't a friend)		

Try conjugating the example nouns from above to their negative forms:

<u>Noun</u>		ない-form		Negative conditional
1. ピンク (pink)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
こ 2. 子ども (child)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
3. すし (sushi)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
4. マンガ (comic)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

Now let's look at some example sentences:

がくせい えん

1. <u>学生</u> <u>でなかったら</u> にゅうじょうりょう は 1000 円 です。

Gakusei denakattara nyuujouryou ha sen en desu.

If you're not a student, the admission fee is 1000 yen.

<u>みどり</u> き

2. スーツ は 緑 でなかったら 着ない です。

Suutsu ha midori denakattara kinai desu.

If the suit isn't green, I won't wear it.

のでき

3. それ は ブラック コーヒー でなっかたら 飲む こと は 出来ません。

Sore ha burakku koohii denakattara nomu koto ha dekimasen.

If that's not black coffee, I can't drink it.

な-adjectives:

<u>な-adjectives</u> <u>ない-form</u> <u>Negative conditional</u>

げんき

元気 (energetic) → 元気ではない → 元気でなかったら (if [subject] isn't energetic)

じょうず

上手 (skilled) → 上手ではない → 上手でなかったら (if [subject] isn't skilled)

しず

静 か (quiet) → 静かではない → 静かでなかったら (if [subject] isn't quiet)

がんこ

頑固 (stubborn) → 頑固ではない → 頑固でなかったら (if [subject] isn't stubborn)

Try conjugating the example α -adjectives from above to their negative forms:

な-adjectives		ない-form		Negative conditional
ふべん 1. 不便 (inconvenient)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
だいじ 2. 大事 (important)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

たいへん
3. 大変 (dreadful) → _____ → _____

Now let's check out some example sentences:

わたし <u>げんき</u> い 1. もし 私 は 元気 <u>でなかったら</u> ジム に 行きません。<u>*</u>⁵⁶ Moshi watashi ha genki denakattara jimu ni ikimasen. If I don't feel well, I won't go to the gym.

きょう しごと はや かえ

2. 今日、 仕事 は <u>ひまでなかったら</u> 早く 帰 れない。
Kyou, shitogoto ha <u>hima denakattara</u> hayaku kaerenai.
If work is <u>busy</u> today, I can't go home early.

けいたいでんわ わたし けいたいでんわ <u>べんり</u>
3. その 携帯 電話 は 私 の (携帯 電話) ょり <u>便利 でなかったら</u>か 買いません。

Sono keitaidenwa ha watashi no (keitaidenwa) yori <u>benri denakattara</u> kaimasen. If that cell-phone is not as useful as my cell-phone, I won't buy it.

Some guy's pro tip #56:

It is not uncommon to see the word $\lceil t \mid t \mid d \rceil$ being used in a conditional sentence. $\lceil t \mid t \mid d \rceil$ actually translates to the word 'if' itself, but is not necessary to use, since when we conjugate our verbs, adjectives or nouns to their conditional form, the meaning of 'if' is automatically included.

And that brings us to the end of our chapter on conditionals with $\lceil t \mid \delta \rfloor$ It's a lot of information take in, and if you didn't quite get it all, please feel free to re-read the parts that are giving you trouble. I wouldn't expect anyone to understand everything perfectly on one read-through. It may be necessary to read this chapter six, seven, or eight or more times before feeling comfortable with it.

Now let's culminate our newly acquired knowledge and try a few practice problems.

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks with the conditional form of the given verbs/adjectives/nouns.

	まいご でんわ
	Ex. 迷子 に <u>なったら</u> 電話 する。(なる)
	Maigo ni <u>nattara</u> denwa suru. (naru)
	If I get lost, I'll call you.
	あたら か たか
	Ex. 新 しい パソコン は <u>高かったら</u> 買わない です。(高 い)
	Atarashii pasokon ha <u>takakattara</u> kawanai desu. (takai)
	If a new computer is expensive, I won't buy one.
	ちわさ ラハブ サノサハ パノ サハト
	あたら えいご せんせい <u>じん</u> せいと Ex . 新 しい 英語 の 先生 が $P extit{ } extit{$
	EX. 別 しい 英語 の 元生 が <u>アメリカ 八 たったら</u> 生徒 たっ が じん
	よろこぶ よ。(アメリカ 人)
	Atarashii eigo no sensei ga amerikajin dattara seito tachi ga yorokobu yo. (amerikajin)
	If the new English teacher is American, the students will be happy.
	じかん
1.	
1.	時間 が行かない です。(ある) Jikan ga ikenai desu. (aru)
	If I don't have time, I won't go.
	わたし あか ようふく か
2.	私 の 赤 ちゃん がピンク の 洋服 を 買
	おんなのこ
	ます。(女の子) Watashi no akachan ga pinku no youfuku wo kaimasu. (onnanoko)
	If my baby is a girl, I'll buy pink clothes.
	if my baby is a giri, i'ii bay plink cloudes.
	やさい た にが
3.	その 野菜 は食べます。(苦 い)
	Sono yasai ha tabemasu. (nigai)
	If that vegetable isn't bitter, I'll eat it.
	ゆき ゆき ふ
4.	雪 が 雪 だるま を 作りましょう! (降る)
	Yuki ga yukidaruma wo tsukurimashou! (furu)
	If it snows, let's make a snowman!
	ゆき ゆき つく ふ
5.	雪が 雪 だるま は 作 れない。(降る)
٥.	Yuki ga yukidaruma ha tsukrenai. (furu)
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

If it doesn't snow, we can't make a snowman.

	まち	ひ	しず	
6.	その 町 は		さない。 (静か)	
	Sono machi ha	hikko	osanai.	
	If that town isn't quiet, I wor	i't move.		
		さけ の	でき	
7.	アメリカ で は	お 酒 を 飲む	こと は 出来ません	。(21さい)
	Amerika de ha		o nomu koto ha dekin	
	In America, if you're not 21	years old you can't drink	alcohol.	, ,
	あじ	た		へん
8.	すし の 味 が	食べ	ない ほう が いい	よ。(変)
	Sushi no aji ga	taben	ai hou ga ii yo. (hen)	
	If the sushi tastes funny, you	shouldn't eat it.		

Chapter Summary:

Let's see what we learned in this chapter:

- $\lceil \sim t \rceil$ can be used with verbs, adjectives and nouns
- We append 「たら」 to the informal past tense form of our verb, adjective or noun.
- We can also apply $\lceil たら \rfloor$ to the negative form of our verbs, adjectives and nouns by replacing $\lceil ない \rfloor$ with $\lceil なかったら \rfloor$
- You will sometimes see [t \ \ \] used at the beginning of a sentence using a conditional
- When conjugating our nouns or α -adjectives to their negative conditional forms, we drop $\lceil t \rceil$ from $\lceil \tau t \rceil$ and then add $\lceil \tau \rangle$ $\tau \rangle$.

Chapter 39: The Conditional form with $\lceil \sim \iota \sharp \rfloor$

Sorry to disappoint you if you thought you had learned everything you needed to know regarding conditionals in the last chapter, because now we're going to take a look at another way to form the conditional, this time with $\lceil \sim l \sharp . \rfloor$

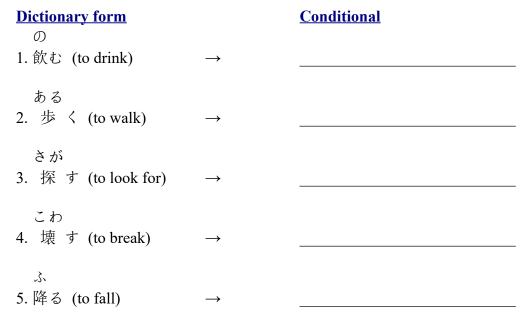
 $\lceil \sim l \vec{x} \rfloor$ works much like $\lceil \sim t \approx 6$, \rfloor but with few grammatical differences, which we'll take a look at later. First, let's just look at how to conjugate to the $l \vec{x}$ -form.

Type I verbs:

For our Type I verbs, we simply take the final character, change it to its え-equivalent and add 「ば.」

Dictionary form		<u> え-equivalent</u>	Conditional
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読め →	読めば (if [subject] reads)
はし 走る (to run)	\rightarrow	走れ →	走れば (if [subject] runs)
か 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	書け →	書けば (if [subject] writes)
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買え →	買えば (if [subject] buys)
およ 泳ぐ (to swim)	\rightarrow	泳げ →	泳げば (if [subject] swims)
と 飛ぶ (to jump/fly)	\rightarrow	飛べ →	飛べば (if [subject] jumps/flies)
し 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow	死ね →	死ねば (if [subject] dies)
はな 話 す (to speak)	\rightarrow	話せ →	話せば (if [subject] speaks)
もらう (to receive)	\rightarrow	もらえ →	もらえば (if [subject] receives)

Try a few on your own:

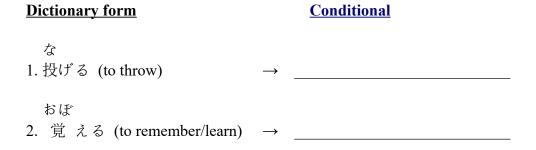


Type II Verbs:

For our Type II verbs, we simply take the final $\lceil \delta \rfloor$ character, and replace it with $\lceil \hbar \iota t t \rceil$

Dictionary form		<u>-る</u>		<u>Conditional</u>
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べ る	\rightarrow	食べれば (if [subject] eats)
おし 教 える (to teach)	\rightarrow	教えれ る	\rightarrow	教えれば (if [subject] teaches)
かんが 考 える (to think)	\rightarrow	考え る	\rightarrow	考えれば (if [subject] thinks)
あげる (to give)	\rightarrow	あげ る	\rightarrow	あげれば (if[subject]gives)

Try a few on your own:



Type III Verbs:

Our Type III verbs follow the same pattern as our Type II verbs.

Dictionary form		<u>-3</u>		Conditional
する (to do)	\rightarrow	する	\rightarrow	すれば (if[subject] does)
<		<		<
来る (to come)	\rightarrow	来~	\rightarrow	来れば (if [subject] comes)

Now let's take a look at some example sentences using our verbs in the $\lceil l \sharp \rfloor$ conditional. The verb phrases will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

にほんご <u>べんきょう</u> はな

1. 日本語 は <u>勉強</u> <u>すれば</u> 話 せる よう に なる よ。 Nihongo ha <u>benkyou sureba</u> hanaseru you ni naru yo.

If you study Japanese, you'll be able to speak it.

<u>ある</u> ふん おも

2. ここ から 歩 けば 5 分 ぐらい かかる と 思 います。

Koko kara arukeba 5 fun gurai kakaru to omoimasu.

If you walk from here, it'll take about five minutes, I think.

はは てがみ <u>か</u> よろこ

3. 母 に 手紙 を 書けば 喜 ぶょ。

Haha ni tegami wo kakeba yorokobu yo.

If you write a letter to Mom, she'd be happy.

がっこう く ともだち あ

4. 学校 に <u>来れば</u> 友達 に 会えます。

Gakkou ni kureba tomodachi ni aemasu.

If you come to school, you can see/meet your friends.

わたし にほんご おし わたし えいご

を教えるよ。

Anata ga watashi ni nihongo wo <u>oshietekurereba</u> watashi ha anata ni eigo wo oshieru yo. <u>If</u> you <u>teach</u> me Japanese, I'll teach you English.

43-adjectives:

For our 13-adjectives, we simply drop the final [13] character and replace it with [thut.]

43-adjective	<u>- 6) </u>	Conditional
たか 高い (expensive) →	高 ↓ →	高ければ (if [subject] is expensive)
あつ 暑 い (hot) →	暑↔ →	暑ければ (if [subject] is hot)
おもしろ 面白 い (interesting) →	面白 ↓↓ →	面白ければ (if [subject] is interesting)
<pre> ⟨) ⟨ ⟩ (good) →</pre>	よ 良 ↔ →	良ければ (if [subject] is good)

Try a few on your own:

Now let's check out some example sentences. Our 43-adjectives and the objects they modify will be highlighted in orange:

1. 高 ければ 買わない です。

Takakereba kawanai desu.

If it's expensive, I won't buy it.

やす
か

2. 安 ければ ぜったい に 買います。

<u>Yasukereba</u> zettai ni kaimasu. <u>If</u> it's <u>cheap</u>, I'll definitely buy it.

さむ カ

3. 寒 ければ うわぎ を 貸してあげる ょ。

Samukereba uwagi wo kashite ageru yo.

If you're cold, I'll lend you a jacket.

おもしろ わたし

4. そのゲームは 面白 ければ 私 もしてみたいです。

Sono geemu ha omoshirokereba, watashi mo shitemitai desu.

If that game is fun, I want to give it a try, too.

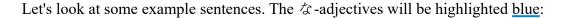
な-adjectives and nouns:

For our &-adjectives and nouns, we simply append [& & or [& or [& or [& d] (they mean the same thing, but [& d] is more formal/polite) to form the conditional.

な-adjective Conditional げんき 元気 (healthy) → 元気なら(ば) (if [subject] is healthy) たいせつ 大切 (important) → 大切なら(ば) (if [subject] is important) ふべん 不便 (inconvenient) → 不便なら(ば) (if [subject] is inconvenient)

Try a few on your own:

<u>な-adjective</u>	Conditional
べんり 1. 便利 (convenient) -	→
たいへん 2. 大変 (dreadful) -	→
じょうぶ 3. 丈夫 (sturdy) -	→



じょうぶ ぜんぶ い でき

1. その バッグ は 丈夫 <u>なら(ば)</u> 全部 入れる こと が 出来る。<u>*⁵⁷</u> Sono baggu ha joubu naraba zenbu ireru koto ga dekiru. If that bag is strong/sturdy, you can put everything in it.

しごと あと げんき あそ き

2. 仕事 の 後 で あなた が 元気 <u>なら(ば)</u> 遊 びに来てください。 Shigoto no ato de anata ga <u>genki naraba</u> asobi ni kite kudasai. <u>If</u> you're <u>feeling up to it</u> after work, stop by and hang out.

たいへん たす

3. その プロジェクト が 大変 なら(ば) 助 けてあげる よ。 Sono purojekuto ga <u>taihen naraba</u> tasukete ageru yo. If that project is difficult, I'll help you.

Some guy's pro tip #57:

Nouns:

Nouns Conditional

せいと
生徒 (student) → 生徒なら(ば) (if he/she is a student)

こども
子供 (child) → 子供なら(ば) (if he/she is a child)

た もの

Try a few on your own:

食べ物 (food)

<u>Nouns</u>		Conditional
ほん 1. 本 (book)	\rightarrow	
2. キャンディー (candy)	\rightarrow	

→ 食べ物なら(ば) (if it is food)

Now it's time to look at the negative form. If you are comfortable with conjugating to the negative form with $\lceil \sim t \leq 1 \rceil$, this should be a nice review, as $\lceil \sim l \lesssim 1 \rceil$ follows the same principles.

We'll start with our verbs. The nice thing about the negative conditional with $\lceil l \sharp \rceil$ is that all verbs (Type I, II and III) are conjugated the same way.

Verbs:

Dictionary form	ない-form		Negative conditional	
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読まな い	\rightarrow	読まなければ (if [subject] doesn't read)
はし 走 る (to run)	\rightarrow	走らな い	\rightarrow	走らなければ (if [subject] doesn't run)
か 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	書かな い	\rightarrow	書かなければ (if [subject] doesn't write)
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買わな ↓	\rightarrow	買わなければ (if [subject] doesn't buy)
およ 泳 ぐ (to swim)	\rightarrow	泳がな い	\rightarrow	泳がなければ (if [subject] doesn't swim)
と 飛ぶ (to jump)	\rightarrow	飛ばな い	\rightarrow	飛ばなければ (if [subject] doesn't jump)
し 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow	死なな い	\rightarrow	死ななければ (if [subject] doesn't die)
はな 話 す (to speak)	\rightarrow	話さな ↓	\rightarrow	話さなければ (if [subject] doesn't speak)
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べな ↓	\rightarrow	食べなければ (if [subject] doesn't eat)
おし 教 える(to teach)	\rightarrow	教えな い	\rightarrow	教えなければ (if [subject] doesn't teach)

かんが 考 える(to think) → 考えな
$$\mapsto$$
 考えなければ (if [subject] doesn't think) する (to do) → しな \mapsto しなければ (if [subject] doesn't do) く こ スタン スタン 来なければ (if [subject] doesn't come)

Try a few on your own:

Dictionary form		ない-form		Negative conditional
の 1. 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
ある 2. 歩く (to walk)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
さが 3. 探 す (to look for)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
こわ 4. 壊 す (to break)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
ふ 5. 降る (to fall)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
な 6. 投げる(to throw)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
おぼ 7. 覚 える (to remember)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
み 8. 見える (to see/look)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

Now let's take a look at some example sentences. The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

<u>か</u> ごうかく でき 1. レポート を <u>書かなければ</u> 合格 は 出来ない ょ。

Repooto wo <u>kakanakereba</u> goukaku ha dekinai yo.

If you don't write your report, you can't pass.

でんしゃ わたし はし ま

私 たち は 走 らなければ 雷車 に間に合わないよ。

Watashitachi ha hashiranakereba densha ni maniawanai yo.

If we don't run, we won't make the train.

あめ Σ,

雨 が 降らなければ ジョギング しょう。

Ame ga furanakereba jyogingu shiyou.

If it doesn't rain, let's go jogging.

べんきょう かあ

しなければ お 母 さん に 怒 られる よ。 勉強 4.

Benkyou shinakereba okaasan ni okorareru yo.

If you don't study, Mom will get mad at you.

にほんご おぼ

日本語 を 覚 えれば マンガ を 読める よう に なります。

Nihongo wo oboereba manga wo yomeru you ni narimasu.

If I learn Japanese, I'll be able to read Japanese comics.

ぼく ひとり きん

おこ

6. あなた が ジム に xなければ 僕 は 一人 で 筋 トレ する。x x

Anata ga jimu ni konakereba boku ha hitori de kintore suru.

If you don't come to the gym, I'll work out by myself.

かぎ さが け

探 さなければ あなた の 鍵 は 決っして 見つからない よ。

Sagasanakereba anata no kagi ha kesshite mitsukaranai yo.

If you don't look, you'll never find your keys.

Some guy's pro tip #58:

きんにく

The Japanese word for 'muscle' is 「筋肉」, and the word for 'training' is expressed in Katakana

きん

as 「トレーニング.」 If we combine the two, we get 「 筋 トレ」 to mean 'muscle training.'

Now let's check out our 43-adjectives.

41-adjectives:

Again, all we're going to do is conjugate our い-adjective to its ない-form, drop the final 「い」 and add 「ければ.」

Try a few on your own:

| Negative conditional | Popt | Po

Let's take a look at some example sentences. The 43-adjectives will be highlighted in orange:

あたら <u>やす</u> か 1. 新 しい パソコン は <u>安 くなければ</u> 買わない です。 Atarashii pasokon ha yasukunakereba kawanai desu.

If a new computer isn't cheap, I won't buy one.

あたら <u>たか</u> か 2. 新 しい パソコン は <u>高 くなければ</u> 買います。

Atarashii pasokon ha takakunakereba kaimasu. If a new computer isn't expensive, I'll buy one.

さむ さんぽ

3. 寒 くなければ 散歩 します。

Samukunakereba sanpo shimasu. If it's not cold, I'll go for a walk.

てんき ょ うみ い

4. 天気 が 良くなければ 海 に 行かない。

Tenki ga yokunakereba umi ni ikanai.

If the weather isn't nice, I won't go to the beach.

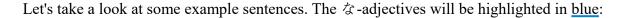
Finally, let's move on to our な-adjectives and nouns.

な-adjectives:

<u>な-adjective</u>	ない-form	Negative conditional		
げんき 元気 (healthy) →	元気で はない	→ 元気でなければ (if it's not healthy)		
たいせつ 大切 (important)→	大切で はない	→ 大切でなければ (if it's not important)		
ふべん 不便 (inconvenient)→	不便で はない	→ 不便でなければ (if it's not inconvenient)		

Try a few on your own:

な-adjective	ない-form	Negative conditional
べんり 1. 便利 (convenient)	→	
たいへん 2. 大変 (dreadful)	→	
じょうぶ 3. 丈夫 (sturdy)	→	



げんき い

1. 元気 でなければ 行かなくていい です よ。

Genki denakereba ikanakute ii desu yo.

If you don't feel well, you don't have to go.

2. その バッグ は 丈夫 _でなければ 買わない ほう が いい と 思 います。

Sono baggu ha joubu denakereba kawanai hou ga ii to omoimasu.

If that bag isn't strong/sturdy/well made, you shouldn't buy it.

If you made it through this chapter and the last, congratulations! Perhaps you can treat yourself to some nice sushi or tempura, to celebrate.

In the meantime, however, as per usual, let's wrap it up with a little exercise.

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks with the properly conjugated verb/noun/&-adjective/4-adjective.

Ex. If it doesn't rain, I'll walk there.

Ex. If you're free tomorrow, come hang out.

1. If you're a student, you can enter for free.

2. If your English isn't good, American movies are hard to understand.

	くつ か <u>やす</u> その 靴 を 買います。 (<u>安</u> <u>い</u>) sono kutsu wo kaimasu. (<u>vasui</u>)
4.	If I have time, I'll study some Japanese.
	じかん にほんご べんきょう 時間 が 日本語 を 勉強 します。 (<u>ある</u>) Jikan ga nihongo wo benkyou shimasu. (<u>aru</u>)
5.	If you come to Japan, we can get together!
	にほん わたし あ <u>く</u> 日本 に 私 に 会える よ! (<u>来る</u>) Nihon ni watashi ni aeru yo! (<u>kuru</u>)
6.	If you study hard, you'll pass.
	いっしょうけんめい べんきょう ごうかく 一生懸命 勉強 合格 できる よ。(する) Isshyoukenmei benkyou goukaku dekiru yo. (suru)
7.	If you're Japanese is good, you can read this article.
	にほんご よ <u>じょうず</u> 日本 語 がこの きじ を 読めます。(<u>上手</u>) Nihongo gakono kiji wo yomemasu. (jouzu)
8.	If the weather is nice I'll go for a walk.
	てんき さんぽ よ 天気 が 散歩 する。(良い) Tenki ga sanopo suru. (yoi)
9.	If the weather isn't nice, I won't take a walk.
	てんき さんぽ そんぽ 天気 が 散歩 しない。(<u>良い</u>) Tenki ga sanpo shinai. (yoi)

3. If they're cheap, I'll buy those shoes

10. If the child is at least 120 centimeters tall, they can ride the roller coaster.

And finally, one *very* important note to remember when using $\lceil \sim l \sharp \rfloor$ is that the sentence *cannot* end in the past tense. If we want to use the past tense, we use $\lceil \sim t \sharp \rbrace$, \rfloor instead.

When I opened the door, a fly came in.

Doa wo akereba hae ga hairu yo. If/When I open the door, a fly will come in.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- To conjugate a Type I verb to its conditional $l \sharp$ -form, we change the last character to its $\mathring{\lambda}$ equivalent and append $\lceil l \sharp \rceil$
- To conjugate a Type II verb to its conditional ば-form, we drop 「る」 and append 「れば」
- Type III verbs are conjugated the same way as Type II verbs
- To make this structure with nouns and な-adjectives we simply append 「なら」 or 「ならば」
- To make this structure with ι_{3} -adjectives, we drop the trailing $\lceil \iota_{3} \rfloor$ character and append $\lceil \iota_{7} \rfloor$ $\uparrow_{1} \iota_{1} \iota_{3} \iota_{3} \iota_{3}$
- To make the negative form with verbs and ι_{3} -adjectives, we first conjugate to the ι_{3} -form and then drop the trailing ι_{3} character and append ι_{3} -think ι_{3}
- To make the negative form with nouns and な-adjectives, we append 「でなければ」

Chapter 40: Talking about plans with 「~つもり」

 $\lceil \sim \supset t \mid n \rfloor$ is a very convenient and easy to use structure that describes what you or someone is planning to do. To use $\lceil \sim \supset t \mid n \rfloor$, all we have to do is append it to the dictionary form of our verb. What's nice about this construction is that it works the same for Type I, II and III verbs. We simply append $\lceil \supset t \mid n \rfloor$ to the dictionary form of verb our verb.

$$\frac{\text{Verb}}{\text{to do}}$$
 \Rightarrow (to do)

 \Rightarrow するつもり (plan to do)

か 書く (to write)

 \Rightarrow 書くつもり (plan to write)

の 飲む (to drink)

 \Rightarrow 飲むつもり (plan to drink)

かんが 考えるつもり (plan to think)

く 来る (to come)

 \Rightarrow 来るつもり (plan to come)

Let's look at some example sentences. The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

And if we want to talk about something we *were* planning to do, we simply conjugate $\lceil \vec{c} \cdot \vec{t} \rfloor$ to the past tense, *not* the verb we attach $\lceil \supset t \mid \eta \rfloor$ to.

Verb

~つもり でした

する (to do)

するつもり でした (was planning to do)

か

書く (to write)

→ 書くつもり でした (was planning to write)

の

飲む (to drink)

→ 飲むつもり でした (was planning to drink)

かんが

考 える (to think)

考えるつもり でした (was planning to think)

<

来る (to come)

→ 来るつもり でした (was planning to come)

Let's look at some more example sentences. The verbs will be highlighted in purple:

わたし あした とうきょう

1. 私 は 明日 東京 に 行くつもり でした。

Watashi ha ashita toukyou ni ikutsumori deshita.

I was planning to go to Tokyo tomorrow.

わたし

た

2. 私 は その レストラン で ばんごはん を 食べるつもり でした。

61

Watashi ha sono resutoran de bangohan wo taberu tsumori deshita.

I was planning on eating dinner at that restaurant.

わたし

ほん よ

3. 私 はこの 本 を 読むつもり でした。

Watashi ha kono hon wo yomu tsumori deshita.

I was planning on reading this book.

You may or may not have noticed, but so far, we've only been looking at sentences where 「私」 is the subject. If we want to talk about what someone *else* is/was planning, however, our structure looks a bit different. When talking about the intentions of others (he/she/they), we need to append 「だ と 言っています」 to the end of our sentence.

かれ にほん し

X 彼 は 日本 に 行くつもり です。

Kare ha nihon ni iku tsumori desu.

He is planning on going to Japan.

かれ

にほん い

63

OK 彼 は 日本 に 行くつもり だ と 言っています。

Kare ha nihon ni iku tsumori da to itteimasu.

He (said he) is planning on going to Japan.

Another minor note is that we can only use $\lceil \supset \xi \mid \emptyset \rfloor$ for things that we decide or can control ourselves. We *cannot* use it for something that is determined by something/someone else.

The following sentences are *incorrect*.



Watashi ha shiken ni gou kaku surutsumori desu. I'm planning on passing the test.

$$oldsymbol{X}$$
 私 は お 金 持 ち に なるつもり です。

Watashi ha okane mochi ni narutsumori desu.

I'm planning on becoming rich.

Now let's try some practice problems. Using the polite form of the verbs, translate the following sentences using the given verb. Pay attention to the tense and who the subject of the sentence is.

Practice problems:

Ex. I am planning on quitting my job.

Watashi ha shigoto wo <u>yameru tsumri desu.</u> (yameru)

Ex. He said he was planning on studying Spanish.

1. I'm planning on ordering sushi.

2. He is planning on ordering sushi.

3. He was planning on ordering sushi.	
かれ ちゅうもん 彼 は すし を 注文	
Kare ha sushi wo chuumon	(suru)
4. I was planning on buying a suit.	
わたし	か
私 は スーツ を	。(買う)
Watashi ha suutsu wo	(kau)
5. Dad said he is planning on taking a walk.	
とお さんぽ	<i>(</i>)
お 父 さん は 散歩	。(する)
Otoosan ha sanpo	(suru)
6. Kevin said he is planning on coming to Japan.	
にほん	<
ケビンさん は 日本 に	
Kevin-san ha nihon ni	(kuru)
7. She said she was planning on moving to Nagasaki.	
かのじょ ながさき	ひっこ
彼女 は 長崎 に	。(引っ越す)
Kanojo ha nagasaki ni	(hikkosu)
8. I'm planning on writing the report.	
私 は レポート を	。(書く)
Watashi ha repooto wo	(kaku)
napter Summary:	
t's recap what we learned in this chapter:	

<u>Ch</u>

Let

- To talk about our intentions, all we have to do is append $\lceil 2 \notin \emptyset \rfloor$ to the dictionary form of
- When talking about the plans of others, we need to use 「つもり だ と 言っている」
- To talk about the past, the verb we append $\lceil 2 \notin \emptyset \rfloor$ to remains in its dictionary form and we conjugate 「です」 to its past tense form

Chapter 41: Asking for permission with 「~てもいい」

One of the most important things you should learn, especially if you're going to be traveling around Japan, is how to ask for permission to do something.

Given that we already know how to conjugate a verb to its 7-form, this should be an easy, yet extremely valuable, lesson.

To ask for permission to do something, we simply append $\lceil t \mid \iota \mid \iota \mid \rfloor$ to the τ -form of our verb.

We already know that $\lceil \iota \iota \iota \iota \iota \rfloor$ means 'good.' So, when we ask a question with $\lceil \sim \tau \in \iota \iota \iota \iota \iota, \rfloor$ we are essentially asking, 'Is it *good* if ... [verb]?' Of course, English speakers would be more comfortable with the more natural translation: 'Is it okay/all right if ... [verb]?" or simply "Can ... [verb]?"

Let's look at some sample conjugations. You'll notice that the conjugation is the same for Type I, II and III verbs:

<u>Verb</u>		<u>T-form</u>		<u>~てもいい</u>
か 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	書いて	\rightarrow	書いてもいい (OK to write)
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べて	\rightarrow	食べてもいい (OK to eat)
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読んで	\rightarrow	読んでもいい (OK to read)
かんが 考 える (to think	$(x) \rightarrow$	考えて	\rightarrow	考えてもいい (OK to think)
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買って	\rightarrow	買ってもいい (OK to buy)
おし 教 える (to teach)	\rightarrow	教えて	\rightarrow	教えてもいい (OK to teach)
する (to do)	\rightarrow	して	\rightarrow	してもいい (OK to do)
く 来る (to come)	\rightarrow	き 来て	\rightarrow	き 来てもいい (OK to come)

Try conjugating a few yourself:

Dictionary form	<u>T-form</u>	<u>~てもいい</u>
はら 1. 払 う (to pay) →	<i>→</i>	
し 2. 死ぬ (to die) →	<i>→</i>	
おぼ 3. 覚 える(to remember) →	<i>→</i>	
き 4. 着る (to wear) →	<i>→</i>	
およ 5. 泳 ぐ (to swim) →	<i>→</i>	

Let's look at some example sentences. And please notice that when the subject of the sentence is 'I,' we わたし don't need to include \lceil 私 \rfloor in the Japanese sentence:

①
1. この ジュース を 飲んでもいい? **59
Kono juusu wo nondemoii?
Can I drink this juice?

なまえ <u>か</u>
2. ここ に 名前 を <u>書いてもいい</u> です か?
Koko ni namae wo <u>kaitemoii</u> desu ka?
<u>Is it all right if</u> I <u>write</u> my name here?

かれ <u>け</u>
3. 彼 がテレビを<u>消してもいい</u>ですか?
Kare ga terebi wo <u>keshitemoii</u> desu ka?
<u>Can</u> he <u>turn off</u> the T.V.?

かのじょ き
4. 彼女 も ミーティング に 来てもいい です か?
Kanojo mo miitingu ni <u>kitemoii</u> desu ka?
<u>Is it okay if she comes</u> to the meeting, too?

Some guy's pro tip #59:

In casual situations, $\lceil \sim \tau \notin \iota_1 \iota_2 ? \rfloor$ (without $\lceil \tau \tau \tau \tau \rangle$) is perfectly fine.

Of course, sometimes, we might want to ask for permission to *not* do something. In that case, we take the $\alpha \cup$ -form of our verb, drop the trailing $\lceil \cup \rceil$ and add $\lceil < \tau \in \cup \cup \rceil$.

Let's look at some sample conjugations:

<u>Verb</u>		ない-form		<u>+くてもいい</u>
か 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	書かな い	\rightarrow	書かなくてもいい (OK not to write)
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べな艹	\rightarrow	食べなくてもいい (OK not to eat)
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読まな ↓	\rightarrow	読まなくてもいい (OK not to read)
かんが 考 える (to thin	ık)→	考えな い	\rightarrow	考えなくてもいい (OK not to think)
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買わな い	\rightarrow	買わなくてもいい (OK not to buy)
おし 教 える (to teach)	\rightarrow	教えな ↓	\rightarrow	教えなくてもいい (OK not to teach)
する (to do)	\rightarrow	しな い	\rightarrow	しなくてもいい (OK not to do)
く 来る (to come)	\rightarrow	こ 来な い	\rightarrow	こ 来なくてもいい (OK not to come)

Try conjugating a few yourself:

おぼ 3. 覚える(to remember) き 4. 着る (to wear) およ 5. 泳ぐ (to swim) →

わたし

Let's check out some example sentences. Again, please note that when the subject is 'I,' 「 私 」 is left out of the Japanese sentence.

か

1. レポート を 書かなくてもいい です か?

Repooto wo kakanakutemoii desu ka? <u>Is it all right if I don't write</u> the report?

かのじょ ほん

彼女 は この 本 を 読まなくてもいい です か? 2. Kanojo ha kono hon wo yomanakutemoii desu ka? Is okay if she doesn't read this book?

あたら くるま か

車 を 買わなくてもいい です か? Atarashii kuruma wo kawanakutemoii desu ka? Is it okay if I don't buy a new car?

4. すし が 好き じゃない。食べなくてもいい です か? Sushi ga suki janai. Tabenakutemoii desu ka? I don't like sushi. Is it okay if I don't eat it?

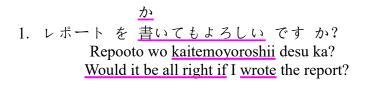
5. スミス さん も ミーティング に 来なくても いい です か? Sumisu-san mo miitingu ni konakutemo ii desu ka?

Is it okay if Mr. Smith doesn't come to the meeting, as well?

It's worth mentioning that there are more polite ways to ask for permission to do something.

We can also use 「~ても よろしい です か?」or 「~て かまいません か?」if we find ourselves in a formal situation and want to be *extra* polite.

All of the above examples can have 「てもいい」replaced with either 「てもよろしい です か? 」 or 「ても かまいません か? 」 and the meaning will be the same. The only thing that will change is the level of politeness.



3. タバコ を 吸っても かまいません か?
Watashi ha tabako wo <u>suttemo kamaimasen</u> ka?
<u>May</u> I <u>smoke</u>?

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Translate the following sentences into Japanese using the given words in parentheses:

4. May I use your pen? (あなた の ペン / 使 き

た

5. Can I eat lunch? (ランチ / 食べる)

?

かれし

6. Is it okay if he closes the door? (彼 / ドア / 閉める)

9

<u>かのじょ ぎゅうにゅう</u> <u>か</u>
7. Is it all right if she doesn't buy milk? (彼女 / 牛乳 / 買う)

2

Some guy's pro tip #60:

か

The verb 「借りる」 means 'to borrow,' but when asking for permission to use someone's phone, we

translate it as 'use.' Also, when asking permission to use someone's bathroom, the verb 「借りる」is also used.

か Ex.トイレ を 借りてもいい です か?

Toire wo karitemo ii desu ka? Can I use your bathroom?

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- To ask for permission to do something, we simply append 「もいい」 to the て-form of our verb
- In casual situations, it is not necessary to use 「です か?」
- To ask for permission to *not* do something we use our verb's ない-form as the base
- When the subject of a sentence is 'I,' it is common to not use 「私」

Chapter 42: 'Until' and 'by'

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at how to use the Japanese equivalents of 'until' and 'by.' Fortunately for us, these two words work almost exactly the same as they do in English. Unfortunately, however, the two words resemble each other quite a bit, and can be easy to confuse, initially.

First, let's take a look at 「まで.」

 $\lceil \sharp \circlearrowleft \rceil$ is the Japanese equivalent of 'until,' and can be used in conjunction with <u>nouns</u> and <u>time expressions</u>, or <u>verbs</u> in their dictionary forms.

Let's start off by looking at some examples with $\lceil \sharp \circlearrowleft \rfloor$ appearing after <u>nouns/time expressions</u>.

あした にほん

1. 明日 <u>まで</u> 日本 に います。

Ashita made nihon ni imasu.

I'll be in Japan until tomorrow.

<u>ふゆ</u>

2. <u>冬 まで</u> セーター を 着ません。

Fuyu made seetaa wo kimasen.

I don't wear sweaters until winter.

らいげつ

<u>来月</u> <u>まで</u> れんしゅう します。

Raigetsu made renshuu shimasu.

I'll be practicing until next month.

わたし そうじ

4. パーティー まで 私 は ずっと 掃除 します。

Paatii made watashi ha zutto souji shimasu.

Until the party, all I'm going to do is clean.

わたしす

5. 20さい まで 私 は アメリカ に 住んでいました。

Nijussai made watashi ha amerika ni sundeimashita.

I lived in America until I was 20 years old.

わたし じ はたら

6. 私 は 6 時 まで 働 きます。

Watashi ha rokuji made hatarakimasu.

I'll work until 6 o'clock.

Now let's look at some examples of $\lceil \sharp \sigma \rfloor$ appearing after <u>verbs</u> in their dictionary forms:



1. お母さんが 帰るまで 家 を出れない。

Okaasan ga kaeru made ie wo derenai.

I can't leave the house until Mom comes home.

わ べんきょう

2. これが分かるまで 勉強 します。

Kore ga wakaru made benkyou shimasu.

I'm going to study this until I understand it.

かのじょ つ

3. 彼女 が着くまで リラックス できない。

Kanojo ga tsuku made rirakkusu dekinai.

I won't be able to relax until she arrives.

4. 辞書 を 買うまで 英語 を 勉強 できない。

Jisho wo kau made eigo wo benkyou dekinai.

Until I buy a dictionary, I can't study English.

Next, let's look at 「までに.」

「 $\sharp \mathcal{C} \mathcal{C}$] equates to 'by,' in English. And as you can see, it resembles $\lceil \sharp \mathcal{C}, \rfloor$ with the only difference being the extra $\lceil \mathcal{C} \rfloor$ at the end. When you are first learning, it is easy to confuse these two, but try your best to remember that 'until' is $\lceil \sharp \mathcal{C} \rfloor$ and 'by' is $\lceil \sharp \mathcal{C} \mathcal{C}. \rfloor$

 $\lceil \sharp \mathcal{C} \mathcal{C} \rfloor$ can also come just after nouns and time expressions, or dictionary form verbs.

Let's look at some examples with <u>nouns/time expressions</u> first.

<u>じ</u> いえ つ

1. 6 時 までに 家 に 着きます。

Rokuji madeni ie ni tsukimasu.

I'll be home by 6 o'clock.

らいげつ

2. 来月 _までに アメリカ に います。

Raigetsu madeni amerika ni imasu.

I'll be in America by next month.

3. <u>30さいまでに</u> 結婚 したいです。

Sanjussai madeni kekkon shitai desu.

I want to get married by the time I'm 30.

あした じ き

4. 明日、<u>12時 までに</u> 来てください。

Ashita, juuniji madeni kitekudasai.

Please come tomorrow by 12 o'clock.

Now let's look at some examples using dictionary form verbs.

えいが はじ えいがかん

1. 映画 が 始 <u>まる までに</u> 映画館 に 着く かな。<u>*</u>¹

Eiga ga <u>hajimaru madeni</u> eigakan ni tsuku kana.

I wonder if I'll arrive before the movie starts.

<u>く</u> わたし

Anata ga koko ni kuru made ni watashi ha mou inai desu.

By the time you come, I won't be here.

いえ つ わたし ね

3. あなたが家に着くまでに私は寝ています。

Anata ga ie ni tsuku made ni watashi ha neteimasu.

By the time you get home, I'll be sleeping.

わたし し いちど

4. 私 は 死ぬ までに 一度 スカイダイビング を してみたい です。

Watashi ha shinu made ni ichido sukaidaibingu wo shitemitai desu.

I want to try sky diving once before I die.

Some guy's pro tip #61:

「かな」 can be used at the end of sentences to express doubt or worry.

わたし

Ex. 私 は それ が できる かな。。。

Watashi ha sore ga dekiru kana...

I wonder if I can do that...

かのじょく

Ex. 彼女 も 来る かな。。。

Kanojo mo kuru kana...

I wonder if she's coming too...

きょう あめ ふ

Ex. 今日 は 雨 が降るかな。

Kyou ha ame ga furu kana.

I wonder if it'll rain today.

Now let's try some practice problems.
Practice problems:
Fill in the blank with either「まで」or「までに.」
Ex. I can't go home until he comes.
かれ く ぼく かえ 彼 が 来る <u>まで</u> 僕 は 帰 れない。 Kare ga kuru <u>made</u> boku ha kaerenai.
1. I'll be at school until 8 o'clock.
わたし じ がっこう 私 は 8 時 学校 に います。 Watashi ha hachiji gakkou ni imasu.
2. I'll finish my homework by the time you get home.
わたし かえ しゅくだい お 私 は あなた が 帰 る 宿題 を 終わらせる よ。 Watashi ha anata ga kaeru shukudai wo owaraseru yo.
3. I go to sleep by 11 o'clock.
わたし じ ね 私 は 11時寝ます。 Watashi ha juuichiji nemasu.
4. I won't leave my house until I can write this Kanji.
わたし かんじ か いえ で Nえ で A は この 漢字 を 書ける よう に なる 家 を 出ない! Watashi ha kono kanji wo kakeru you ni naru ie wo denai!
5. I won't forgive him until he apologizes.
かれ あやま わたし かれ ゆる 彼 が 誤 る 私 は 彼 を 許 さない。

Kare ga ayamaru _____ watashi ha kare wo yurusanai.

にほん

 かれ
 がつ
 にほん

 彼らは10月
 日本にいます。

 Karera ha juu gatsu
 nihon ni imasu.

6. They will be in Japan until October.

かれ

がつ

7. I'll write this report by tomorrow.

Watashi		/ · · · -	repooto wo kal	, , -	
私	は	明日	レポート を	書き	ます。
わたし		あした		か	

8. I can't play with my friends until I clean my room.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- 「まで」 can be translated as 'until'
- ・ 「までに」 can be translated as 'by'
- Both $\lceil \sharp \mathcal{C} \rfloor$ and $\lceil \sharp \mathcal{C} \mathcal{C} \rfloor$ can be used in conjunction with nouns, time expressions, and verbs
- We can say 「かな」 at the end of our sentences to express doubt or uncertainty

Chapter 43: Telling others what you'll be doing with 「と 思う」

おも

In this chapter, we'll be using our knowledge of the volitional form in conjunction with 「と 思う」 to express our intention to do something.

If you're not confident in conjugating verbs to their volitional forms, it is highly recommend that you go back to chapter 26 and review before proceeding.

お も

Let's look at a few example conjugations.

Dictionary form verb	Volitional form	~と 思う
ある 歩く (to walk) →	歩こう -	→ 歩こう と思う (going to walk)
た 食べる (to eat) →	食べよう -	→ 食べよう と思う (going to eat)
つく 作 る (to make) →	作ろう -	→ 作ろう と思う (going to make)
の 飲む (to drink) →	飲もう -	→ 飲もう と思う (going to drink)
い 行く (to go) →	行こう -	→ 行こう と思う (going to go)
する (to do) →	しょう -	→ しょう と思う (going to do)
く 来る (to come) →	こ 来よう -	こ → 来よう と思う (going to come)

Try a few on your own:

Dictionary form		Volitional form		<u>~と 思う</u>
か				
1. 書く (to write)	\rightarrow		<i>→</i>	

Now let's check out some example sentences. The volitional forms will be highlighted in purple:

 こんしゅうまつ
 <u>べんきょう</u>
 <u>おも</u>

 1.
 今週末
 、 <u>勉強</u>
 <u>しょうと</u>
 思 <u>う</u>。

Konshuumatsu, benkyou <u>shiyoutoomou</u>. I'm going to study this weekend.

らいねん にほん <u>い おも</u> 2. 来年 、 日本 に <u>行こうと 思 う</u>。

Rainen, nihon ni <u>ikoutoomou.</u>
<u>I'm going to go</u> to Japan next year.

<u>か</u> <u>おも</u>

3. 新 しい スーツ を <u>買おうと</u> <u>思 います</u>。

Atarashii suutsu wo <u>kaoutoomoimasu</u>. I'm going to buy a new suit.

ほん <u>よ</u> <u>おも</u>

4. この 本 を <u>読もうと</u> <u>思</u> <u>います</u>。

Kono hon wo <u>yomoutoomoimasu</u>. I'm going to read this book.

きのう こ おも じかん

5. 昨日 、 <u>来ようと</u> 思 <u>った</u> が 時間 が なかった。

Kinou, koyoutoomotta ga jikan ga nakatta.

I was going to come yesterday, but I didn't have time.

Of course, our plans don't always go the way we would like them to (at least, mine don't anyway). That's why you may often see this grammar structure coupled with either $\lceil \mathfrak{b}^{\varsigma} \rfloor$ or $\lceil \mathfrak{b}^{\varsigma} \rangle$ to express a contrast in what was expected and what actually happened (like in example sentence 5 from above).

Let's take a look at a few more examples:

か おも たか

1. それ を <u>買おう と</u> <u>思 った</u> <u>が</u> 高 すぎた。

Sore wo kaou to omotta ga takasugita.

I was going to buy that, but was too expensive.

おも さむ

2. けさ、 ジョギング しょう と 思 った が 寒 すぎた。

Kesa, jogingu wo shiyou to omotta ga samusugita.

I was going to go jogging this morning, but it was too cold.

<u>たべ</u> おも たの

3. すし を 食 べょう と 思 った けど ちゃんぽん を 頼 みました。<u>*</u>[©]

Sushi wo tabeyou to omotta kedo chanpon wo tanomimashita.

I was going to eat sushi, but I ordered chanpon.

Some guy's pro tip #62:

 $\lceil 5 \nsim k \not \in k \rceil$ is noodle-based food that is particularly popular in Nagasaki. If you ever make it out there, I definitely recommend you try it.

As always, we aren't only limited to speaking in the affirmative. To make our sentence negative, and

おも

show that we have *no* intention of doing something, we need to conjugate $\lceil \mathbb{Z} \rceil$ to its negative

form; 「 思 わない」.

Here are some example sentences:

こんしゅうまつ <u>べんきょう</u> <u>おも</u>

1. 今週末 、 勉強 しょう と 思 わない。

Konshuumatsu, benkyou shiyou to omowanai.

I'm not going to study this weekend.

らいねん にほん <u>い</u> おも

2. 来年 、 日本 に 行こう と 思 わない。

Rainen, nihon ni ikou to omowanai.

I'm not going to go to Japan next year.

わたし あたら か おも

3. 私 は 新 しい スーツ を 買おう と 思 いません。

Watashi ha atarashii suutsu wo kaou to omoimasen.

I'm not going to buy a new suit.

わたし ほん よ おも

4. 私 はこの 本を<u>読もうと</u>思っていません。

Kono hon wo yomou to omotteimasen.

Watashi ha I'm not going to read this book.

Paatii ni ikou to omowanai kedo kare ni purezento wo ageyou to omou.

I'm not going to the party, but I'm going to give him a present.

おも

And one final note, when we want to talk about other people's intentions, we need to use $\lceil \sim$ と 思っている. \rfloor

1. 今週末 、彼は 勉強 しょう と 思 っています。

Konshuumatsu, kare ha benkyou shiyou to omotteimasu.

He's planning to study this weekend.

2. 彼女 は 来年 日本に行こうと思っている。

Kanojo ha rainen nihon ni ikou to omotteiru.

She's planning on going to Japan next year.

3. さやかさん は この 本 を <u>読もう と</u> 思 <u>っていません</u>。

Sayaka-san ha kono hon wo yomou to omotteimasen.

Sayaka is not planning to read this book.

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Using the given words in parentheses, translate the following sentences into Japanese. Use either the formal or informal forms. And as always, if you find it difficult to write in Kanji, feel free to use Hiragana.

かれええか Ex. He's going to draw a picture. (彼 / 絵 / 描 く) 彼は絵を描こうと思っている/思っています。 1. <u>I'm going to drink coffee</u>. (<u>私</u> /<u>コーヒー</u>/飲む) <u>わたし</u> <u>か</u>
2. <u>I am not going to buy a computer</u>. (<u>私</u> <u>/パソコン</u>/買う) <u>かのじょ</u> <u>たべ</u> 3. <u>She is going to eat sushi</u>. (<u>彼女</u> / <u>すし</u> / <u>食</u> <u>べる</u>) わたし おんがく き 4. <u>I'm going to listen to music</u>. (<u>私</u> / 音楽 / 聞く) かれ おんがく き 5. He is going to listen to music.(彼 / 音楽 /聞く) 6. I'm going to drink tea. (私 /お茶/飲む) かあ ばんごはん つく 7. Mom is going to make dinner. (お 母 さん / 晩御飯 / 作 る)

とお ばんごはん つく

8. Dad is not going to make dinner. (お 父 さん / 晩御飯 / 作 る)

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

• By using 「と 思 う」 with the volitional form of our verb, we can express an intention to do something

- When talking about the intentions of others, we use 「と 思 っている」 おも
- We can use the negative form of 「と 思う」 to express an intention to *not* do something

Chapter 44: 'But' with 「が」 and 「けど」

If you have read this book from the beginning up to this point, you've seen this grammar structure a few times already in some of the example sentences or practice problems. Now let's take a look at both $\lceil \cancel{b} \rceil$ and $\lceil \cancel{b} \rceil \ge \rceil$ in more detail.

First, let's examine 「か」 a little bit:

[t] can be used to show a contrast between the first and second clause of a sentence.

Our structure will look like this:

Notice how when we use $\lceil \vec{n} \rfloor$ in conjunction with a <u>noun</u> or $\underline{\alpha}$ -adjective, we need to also use $\lceil \vec{\sigma} \rfloor$. When using a <u>verb</u> or $\underline{\omega}$ -adjective, however, $\lceil \vec{\sigma} \rfloor$ can be omitted.

Let's look at some example sentences:

$$\frac{\textbf{5}}{\textbf{1}}$$
 いま $\mathbf{5}$ かう た $\mathbf{1}$ すし が $\mathbf{5}$ が \mathbf

Sushi ga suki desu ga ima daietto chuu dakara taberarenai.

I like sushi, but now I'm on a diet and can't eat it.

2. 私 は それ を 買いたい が 高 すぎます。

Watashi ha sore wo kaitai ga takasugimasu.

I want to buy it, but it's too expensive.

$$\frac{\mathsf{Sd}}{\mathsf{Sd}}$$
 おお 3. それ は アメリカ の \mathbf{a} だが そんなに 大 きくない。 x^{G}

Sore ha amerika no kuruma daga sonnnani ookikunai.

That's an American car, but it's not so big.

Sono resutoran ha yasui ga ryouri ga anmari oishikunai.

That restaurant is cheap, but it's not very good.

Some guy's pro tip #63:

「です」can be shortened to 「だ」in casual situations.

Now let's take a look at 「けど:」

 $\lceil \mathcal{V} \succeq \rfloor$ works much like $\lceil \mathcal{V}, \rfloor$ except it is usually used to show some sort of connection between the first and second clause of a sentence, not necessarily a contrast or contradiction.

Our structure will look like this:

にほん <u>す</u> とうきょう い

1. 日本 に 住んでいる けど 東京 に 行った こと は ない です。

Nihon ni <u>sundeiru kedo</u> toukyou ni itta koto ha nai desu.

I live in Japan, but I've never been to Tokyo.

Kare ha <u>amerika jin da kedo</u> nihongo ga jouzu.

He is American, but he speaks Japanese really well.

Kono heya ha chotto kurai kedo hon ha yomemasu.

This room is a little dark, but I can read books.

Now you may be wondering, "What's the difference between the two? How exactly do I know when to use $\lceil b^{\xi} \rfloor$ and when to use $\lceil l^{\xi} \xi^{\xi} \rfloor$ "

That's a very good question, and for the most part, you can consider them to be the same (barring a few subtle differences in nuance that go beyond the scope of this book).

One difference that *is* worth remembering, though, is that $\lceil \mathcal{V} \mathcal{E} \rfloor$ is a little 'softer' and more polite than $\lceil \mathcal{D} \mathcal{E} \rfloor$.

The two sentences

are basically the same, with the first being a little more polite, or 'softer.'

Anyway, now that you have an idea as to how the structure works, let's try a few practice problems on your own.

Practice problems:

Combine the given two sentences into one using $\lceil \mathfrak{H} \rceil$ or $\lceil \mathfrak{H} \rceil$ (Don't forget $\lceil \mathfrak{H} \rceil$) where necessary!).

1. I invited her, but she said she couldn't go.

2. I'm going to the gym every day, but I'm not losing any weight.

3. Today is Christmas, but I'm going to work.

4. This is expensive, but I'm going to buy it.

5.	He isn't busy, but he won't help me.
	かれ たす 彼 は ひま 助 けてくれません。 Kare ha hima tasukete kuremasen.
6.	I apologized to him, but he didn't forgive me.
	わたし かれ あやま ゆる 私 は 彼 に 謝 った 許 してくれない。 Watashi ha kare ni ayamattayurushite kurenai.
7.	That restaurant is cheap, but it's not very good.
	みせ やす おい あの 店 は 安 いあんまり 美味しくない です。 Ano mise ha yasuianmari oishikunai desu.
8.	I want to go to Japan, but I don't have any money.
	わたし にほん い かね 私 は 日本 に 行きたい お 金 が ない です。 Watashi ha nihon ni ikitaiokane ga nai desu.
9.	This area is peaceful, but it's not very convenient.
	あた しず ふべん この 辺りは 静かとても 不便 なところですよ。 Kono atari ha shizukatotemo fuben na tokoro desu yo.
10.	He lived in America, but his English is bad.
	かれ す えいご へた 彼 は アメリカ に 住んだ 英語 が 下手。 Kare ha amerika ni sunda eigo ga heta.
11.	I want to study, but I don't have time.
	べんきょう じかん 勉強 したい 時間 が ない です。Benkyou shitai jikan ga nai desu.
12.	This is heavy, but I can carry it by myself.
	おも ひとり はここれは 重 い 一人 で 運 べますよ。 Kore ha omoi hitori de hakobemasu yo.

13.	. I studied, but I failed the test.
	べんきょう しけん お 勉強 した 試験 に 落ちた。 Benkyou shita shiken ni ochita.
14.	. She's still a child, but she's very smart.
	かのじょ こ あたま 彼女 はまだ子ども 頭 がすごくいいです。 Kanojo ha mada kodomoatama ga sugoku ii desu.
15.	. I want to go to the match, but I don't know how to get there.
	しあい い い かた わか 試合 に 行きたい 行き 方 が 分 からない です。 Shiai ni ikitai ikikata ga wakaranai desu.
16.	. I overslept, but I made the train.
	ねぼう でんしゃ ま あ 寝坊 した 電車 に 間に合いました。 Nebou shitadensha ni maniaimashita.

Chapter Summary:

Let's see what we learned in this chapter:

- $\lceil \mathfrak{H} \rceil$ and $\lceil \mathfrak{H} \rangle$ can be used to show a connection or contradiction between the first and second clause of a sentence
- 「けど」 is a little 'softer' and more polite than 「が」
- The casual form of 「です」is 「だ」
- When used in conjunction with nouns or &-adjectives, we also need to append [t] before appending [t] or [t]

Chapter 45: Describing excess with 「~すぎる」

When we want to describe something that has gone over an 'acceptable' amount, we can use $\lceil \sim \dagger \not \preceq \rceil$ to do it. This basically equates to 'too \sim ,' in English. As in, 'This is *too* expensive,' or 'I ate *too* much!'

 $\lceil t \not \in \delta \rfloor$ is a very versatile structure because we can we use it with adjectives as well as verbs.

First, let's take a look at a few different verbs and some example conjugations.

Try a few on your own:

ある

Dictionary form

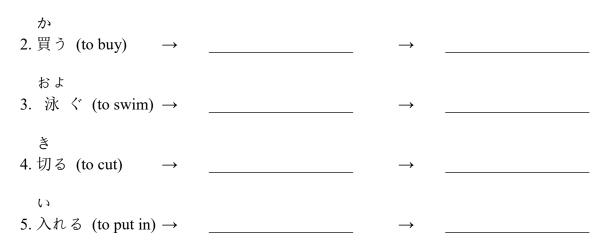
1. 歩 〈 (to walk) →

To conjugate our verbs to their $t \in \mathcal{S}$ -forms, we simply append $t \in \mathcal{S}$ to the $t \in \mathcal{S}$ -stem. You'll notice that this applies to Type I, II and III verbs.

Dictionary form		<u>ます-form</u>		<u>~すぎる</u>
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べ ます	\rightarrow	食べすぎる (to eat too much)
の 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow	飲み ます	\rightarrow	飲みすぎる (to drink too much)
な 泣く (to cry)	\rightarrow	泣き ます	\rightarrow	泣きすぎる (to cry too much)
ょ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読み ます	\rightarrow	読みすぎる (to read too much)
かんが 考 える (to thin	k)→	考え ます	\rightarrow	考えすぎる (to think too much)
する (to do)	\rightarrow	します	\rightarrow	しすぎる (to do too much)
く 来る (to come)	\rightarrow	き 来 ます	\rightarrow	き 来すぎる (to come too much)

<u>ます-form</u>

<u>~すぎる</u>



Now, let's take a look at some example sentences using our verbs:

ぐあい わる た

1. 具合 が 悪 い。食べすぎた。

Guai ga warui. Tabesugita.

I don't feel good. I ate too much.

べんきょう あたま いた

2. 勉強 しすぎて、 頭 が 痛 い! Benkyou shisugite, atama ga itai!

I studied too much, and now my head hurts!

わたし や い <u>か</u>

3. 私 は パン屋 さん に 行って ついつい $\underline{\exists}$ いすぎました。

Watashi ha panya san ni itte, tsuitsui kaisugimashita.

I went to the bakery, and ended up buying too much.

さとう い

4. この ケーキ は まずい。 砂糖 を 入れすぎました。

Kono keeki ha mazui. Satou wo iresugimashita.

This cake is awful. I put in too much sugar.

<u>の</u> よ

5. アルコール を 飲みすぎたら 酔います。

Arukooru wo <u>nomisugitara</u> yoimasu.

If you drink too much alcohol, you'll get drunk.

Now let's take a look at our <u>ta-adjectives</u>.

Using an $\c \circ$ -adjective is pretty straightforward. All we have to do is drop the final $\c \circ$ character before appending $\c \circ$ $\c \circ$.

41-adjective

drop [13]

十すぎる

たか

高 い (high/expensive)
$$\rightarrow$$
 高 \leftrightarrow 高すぎる (too high/expensive)

さむ

寒 い (cold)
$$\rightarrow$$
 寒 \leftrightarrow 寒すぎる (too cold)

たの

楽 しい (fun)
$$\rightarrow$$
 楽し \leftrightarrow 楽しすぎる (too fun)

むずか

難 しい (difficult)
$$\rightarrow$$
 難し \leftrightarrow 難すぎる (too difficult)

Try a few on your own:

<u>い-adjective</u> <u>~すぎる</u>

あつ

やす

にが

あま

つめ

Now let's check out some example sentences:

か

Sore wo kaitai kedo chotto takasugiru.

I want to buy that, but it's a little too expensive.

いえ で きょう さむ

2. 家 を 出たくない。 今日 は 寒 すぎる。

Ie wo detakunai. Kyou ha samusugiru.

I don't want to leave my house. It's too cold today.

かれ かんこくりょうり た から

3. 彼 は 韓国 料理 は食べられません。 <u>辛</u><u>すぎます</u>。<u>*</u>⁴

Kare ha kankoku ryouri ha taberaremasen. <u>Karasugimasu</u>. He can't eat Korean food. It's too spicy.

あまおも

4. アメリカ の キャンディー は 甘 すぎる と 思 います。

Amerika no kyandii ha <u>amasugiru</u> to omoimasu. I think American candy is too sweet.

かんじ むずか

5. 漢字 は 難 しすぎる!

Kanji ha <u>muzukashisugiru!</u> Kanji is too hard!

あま

6. アメリカ の キャンディー は 甘 すぎない。

Amerika no kyandii ha amasuginai.
American candy isn't too sweet.

Some guy's pro tip #64:

When you want to talk about the different cuisines from around the world; Japanese food, Chinese $\eta_{\pm} \tilde{j} \eta$

food, French food, etc... we can simply append \lceil 料理 ,」 which means 'cooking' or 'cuisine,' to the name of the country who's food we want to talk about.

かんこく

韓国 料理 → Korean food イタリア料理 → Italian food

フランス料理 → French food ベトナム料理 → Vietnamese food

Finally, let's take a look at our な-adjectives.

な-adjectives are really easy because we simply leave them as is when appending 「すぎる.」 They don't require any fancy conjugations (yay!).

Let's take a look at some example \underline{x} -adjectives in their $t \not \in \delta$ -forms.

<u>な-adjectives</u> <u>~すぎる</u>

ひま

暇 (free time) \rightarrow 暇すぎる (too much free time)

たいへん 大変 (serious/terrible) \rightarrow 大変すぎる (too serious/terrible) じょうず 上手 (skillful) \rightarrow 上手すぎる (too skillful) へた 下手 (unskillful) \rightarrow 下手すぎる (too unskillful) かんたん 簡単 (easy/simple) \rightarrow 簡単すぎる (too easy/simple)

And just for the sake of it, conjugate a few &-adjectives on your own.

As always, let's finish off with some example sentences:

わたし

あめ

 \mathcal{O}

とうきょう いなか まち <u>しず</u> おも

1. 東京 はうるさい けど この 田舎 の 町 は <u>静 かすぎる</u> と 思 う。<u>*</u>⁵

Toukyou ha urusai kedo kono inaka no machi ha <u>shizuka sugiru</u> toomou.

Tokyo is noisy, but I feel that this country town is <u>too quiet</u>.

2. 雨 の日は 私 のレストランは <u>ひますぎる</u>。どうしょう。。。? Ame no ha watashi no resutoran ha <u>hima sugiru</u>. Dou shiyou...? On rainy days, my restaurant <u>isn't busy at all</u>. What should I do...?

かっこう <u>へん</u> きが 3. そんな 格好 は 変 <u>すぎる</u> よ。着替えて ください。 Sonna kakkou ha <u>hen sugiru</u> yo. Kigaete kudasai. You look <u>ridiculous</u>. Please change clothes.

Some guy's pro tip #65:

If you are somewhat familiar with Japanese already, and particularly if you have ever watched any Japanese Anime, you will have no doubt heard the word 「うるさい」 more than a handful of times. In addition to just meaning 'loud' or 'noisy,' it can also equate to 'shut-up' or 'be quiet.'

なんじ つ なんじ つ なんじ つ なんじ つ なんじ つ Ex. Child:「何時 に 着きます か? 何時 に 着きます か? 何時 に 着きます か?」

Nanji ni tsukimasu ka? Nanji ni tsukimasu ka? Nanji ni tsukimasu ka? "What time are we getting there? What time are we getting there?"

Mother:「うるさい!」 「Urusai!」 "Be quiet!"

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Translate the following sentences into Japanese using the given words in parentheses:

Ex. Today is too/so cold! (kyou / samui)

 今日 は 寒すぎる
 ! (今日 / <u>寒</u> い)

Ex. I ate too much last night. (sakuya / watashi / taberu)

 さくや わたし <u>た</u>

 昨夜、私 は 食べすぎました
 。 (昨夜 / 私 /食べる)

1. I drank too much juice. (watashi / juusu / nomu)

______ わたし <u>の</u> _____。(私 /ジュース / <u>飲む</u>)

2. Tokyo is too crowded. (Toukyou / nigiyaka)

とうきょう _____。(東京 / <u>にぎやか</u>)

Mexican food is too spicy. (mekishiko ryouri / karai)
りょうり <u>から</u> 。(メキシコ 料理 / <u>辛</u> い)
Arizona is too hot! (arizona / atsui)
<u>あつ</u> 。(アリゾナ / <u>暑</u> い)
If it's too expensive, I won't buy it. (sore / takai / kau)
<u>たか</u> か 。(それ / <u>高</u> い / 買う)
Your idea is too strange. (anata no / aidea / hen)
<u>へん</u> 。(あなた / アイディア / <u>変</u>)
If it's not too expensive, I'll buy it. (sore / takai / kau)
<u>たか</u> か 。(それ / <u>高</u> <u>い</u> / 買う)
If work is too slow, I'll go home. (shigoto / hima / kaeru)
しごと <u>ひま</u> かえ 。(仕事 / <u>暇</u> / 帰 る)
I watched too much T.V. (watashi / terebi / miru)
わたし <u>み</u> 。(私 /テレビ / <u>見る</u>)

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We can use 「すぎる」 to describe something as being excessive, or overabundant
- 「すぎる」 can be used in conjunction with い-adjectives, な-adjectives or verbs
- 「すぎる」is a Type II verb, and be conjugated as such
- We can append 「すぎる」 to the ます-stem of verbs
- Before appending 「すぎる」 to い-adjectives, we must drop the trailing 「い」
- な-adjectives require no conjugation when used with 「すぎる」

Chapter 46: Describing locations with 「上,」「下,」 「左」and「右」

Of course, there are many ways to describe the location of an object, but in this chapter we're going to look a basic structure that will enable us to describe where just about anything is; the post office, that jar of crunchy peanut butter, your friend Carol, etc... with just a few simple words.

The structure we'll be using will look like this:

うえ した

To get started, though, let's take a look at some example sentences using $[\pm,]$ ひだり

左 」 and 「右」 ('on top of,' 'below/under,' 'left' and 'right').

Pen ha teeburu no ue ni arimasu.

The pen is on top of the table.

ほん $\frac{し c}{c}$ の 本 は テーブル の $\frac{c}{c}$ に ありました。

Watashi no hon ha teeburu no shita ni arimashita.

My book was under the table.

3. あなた の 財布 は テレビ の <u>右</u> <u>に ある</u>。

Anata no saifu ha terebi no migi ni aru.

Your wallet is to the right of the T.V.

`んこう <u>みぎ</u> 銀行 の <u>右 に あります</u>。 4. ポスト オフィス は

Posuto ofisu ha ginkou no migi ni arimasu.

The post office is to the right of the bank.

妹 はあなたの 妹 の

Watashi no imouto ha anata no imouto no hidari ni imasu.

My little sister is on your little sister's right.

6. 私 の 犬 は ベッド の 下 に います。

Watashi no inu ha beddo no <u>shita ni imasu</u>. My dog is under the bed.

7. $\vec{x} = \vec{x}$ $\vec{x} = \vec{x}$ $\vec{x} = \vec{x}$ $\vec{x} = \vec{x}$

Booru ha beddo no shita ni arimasu.

The ball is under the bed.

8. ベッドの 上 にいる。

Beddo no ue ni iru.

I'm on top of the bed.

9. 彼 の かぎ は 本 の 左 <u>に あります</u>。

Kare no kagi ha hon no hidari ni arimasu.

His keys are to the left of the book.

みぎ

10. あけみちゃん は みささん の <u>右</u> <u>に います</u>。

Akemi-chan ha misa-san no hidari ni imasu.

Akemi is on the left of Misa.

Some guy's pro tip #66:

Next, let's take a look at some example sentences using our last two remaining words to describe

location;「前」and「うしろ」('in front of and 'behind').

1. 彼 は 車 の 前 にいます。

Kare ha kuruma no mae ni imasu.

He is in front of the car.

2. 彼 は 車 の うしろ に います。

Kare ha kuruma no ushiro ni imasu.

He is behind the car.

ねこ まえ

3. ボール は 猫 の <u>前</u> <u>に あります</u>。

Booru ha neko no mae ni arimasu.

The ball is in front of the cat.

まえ

4. ジム は スーパーマーケット の <u>前</u> <u>に あります</u>。

Jimu ha suupaamaaketto no mae ni arimasu.

The gym is in front of the supermarket.

いぬ ねこ

5. 犬 は 猫 の うしろ に いる。

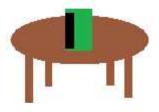
Inu ha neko no ushiro ni iru.

The dog is behind the cat.

Now, let's check out some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Look at the pictures and given words in parentheses to describe where the object is.



Ex. <u>本 は テーブル の 上 に あります</u>。 (本 / テーブル)



ほん 1.____。(本 / テーブ ル)



ねこ ____。(猫 /ベッド) 2. _____ ねこ (猫 /ベッド) ねこ ____。(猫 /ベッド) ねこ 。 (猫 /ボール) ねこ ____。(ボール / 猫) 6. _____



ねこ 7._____。(猫 /テーブル)



ねこ 8._____。(猫 /テーブル)



ねこ 9. 。 (猫 /ボール)



10. _____。 (ボール / テーブル)



ねこ 11. _____。(ボール / 猫)

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We use 「上,」「下,」「左」 and 「右」 to describe an object's location as being above, under/below, to the left, or right of another object
- We use 「うしる」 and 「前」 to describe an object as being behind or in front of another object
- When describing the location of a non-living, inanimate object, we use $\lceil b \rceil$
- When describing the location of a living, animate object, we use 「いる」

Chapter 47: Comparing with things 「より,」「ほ ど」and「の 方 が」

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at how to compare two different things; perhaps the height of our friends, the cost of some shoes, yesterday and today's temperature, etc...

There are actually a number of ways to go about accomplishing this, so we're going to take a look at a few different options.

First, let's check out the least confusing of the three; $[\downarrow b]$.

Our sentence structure will look something like this:

This basically translates to '[object 1] is more [adjective] than [object 2] is.'

Let's take a look at some examples:

Watashi ha uchi no imouto yori yasashii desu.

I am nicer than my younger sister.

Kyou ha kinou yori atsui desu. Today is hotter than yesterday.

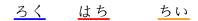
Kono kutsu ha sono kutsu yori yasui desu. These shoes are cheaper than those shoes.

$$\frac{bb}{4}$$
 4. ウサギ さん は 亀 さん より 速 い です。 $*^{6}$

Usagi-san ha kame-san yori hayai desu. The hare is faster than the tortoise.

Hachi ha roku yori ookii desu.

Eight is greater than six.



六 は 八 より 小 さいです。

Roku ha hachi yori chiisai desu. Six is less than eight.

です。 7. 長崎 より

Nagasaki ha toukyou yori anzen desu.

Nagasaki is safer than Tokyo.

私 より 上手 です。 8. あなた は

Anata ha watashi yori jouzu desu.

You are better/more skillful than me.

Some guy's pro tip #67:

When talking about animals, it is common to append $[\stackrel{>}{\circ} h.]$

Now try a few on your own.

Practice problems:

Using the pictures and the given words in parentheses, make your own sentences with $\lceil \sharp \eta \rfloor$



Ex. 赤いシャツ は 青い シャツ より 高い です



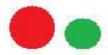
(blue shirt / red shirt / cheap)

かれ かのじょ せ たか (彼/彼女/背が高い) (he/her/tall)



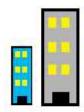
2.

あか みどりいろ おお (赤 いボール / 緑色 の ボール / 大 きい) (red ball / green ball / big)



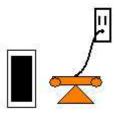
3.

あお いろ (青いビル/ねずみ 色 のビル/ひくい) <u>*</u>⁶⁸ (blue building / gray building / short)



4

でんわ でんわ (けいたい 電話 /こてい 電話 /べんり) (cell phone / house phone / convenient)



5. ______

かのじょ かれ せ (彼女 / 彼 /背 が ひくい) (she / he / short)



6.

みどりいろ あか (緑色 の ボール / 赤 い ボール / 小きい) (green ball / red ball / small)



Some guy's pro tip #68:

いろ

「ねずみ」 means 'rat' and 「色」 means color. Put them together and you get 'rat color,' or what we typically like to refer to as 'gray.' It's worth mentioning, however, that 「グレイ」 ('gray' in Katakana

form) also means 'gray.' Personally, I think 「ねずみ 色」 is more fun to say, though. Use whichever you like.

Now, let's take a look at a *slightly* more complicated way to compare things with 「ほど.」

Here's what our sentence structure will look like:

[object 1] は [object 2] ほど [negative adjective] です

This basically translates to '[object 1] is not as [adjective] as [object 2] is.'

And I say that $\lceil \mathcal{L} \mathcal{L} \rceil$ is *slightly* more complicated to use than $\lceil \mathcal{L} \mathcal{L} \rceil$ because it requires us to use the negative form of the adjective. But, since we are already competent in conjugating adjectives to their negative forms, this shouldn't prove to be much of a problem for us.

In order to demonstrate the meaning and difference between $\lceil \mathcal{L} \mathcal{E} \rfloor$ and $\lceil \mathcal{L} \mathcal{D}, \rfloor$ we're going to look at the example sentences from above, but with $\lceil \mathcal{L} \mathcal{E} \rfloor$ being used instead of $\lceil \mathcal{L} \mathcal{D}, \rfloor$

わたし 私 _ほど 優しくない です。 Uchi no imouto ha watashi hodo yasashikunai desu. My younger sister isn't as nice as me. きょう 暑 くなかった です。 今日 ほど 昨日は Kinou ha kyou hodo atsukunakatta desu. Yesterday wasn't as hot as today.

 くつ
 くつ
 やす

 3. その
 靴
 は
 この
 靴
 ほど
 安
 くない
 です。

 Sono kutsu ha kono kutsu hodo yasukunai desu. Those shoes are not as cheap as these ones. かめ はや 4. 亀 さん は ウサギ さん ほど 速 くない です。 Kame-san ha usagi-san hodo hayakunai desu. The tortoise isn't as fast as the hare. はち おお

5. 六 は 八 ほど 大きくないです。

Roku ha hachi hodo ookikunai desu.

Six isn't as great as eight.

はち ろく ちい

6. 八 は 六 ほど 小 さくない です。
Hachi ha roku hodo chiisakunai desu.
Eight is not less than six.

<u>とうきょう ながさき あんぜん</u>
7. 東京 は 長崎 ほど 安全 では ない です。
Toukyou ha nagasaki hodo anzen dehanai desu.
Tokyo is not as safe as Nagasaki.

8. 私 は あなた ほど 上手 じゃない です。 Watashi ha anata hodo jouzu jyanai desu. I'm not as good/skillfull as you.

Now try a few on your own.

Practice problems:

Using the pictures and the given words in parentheses, make your own sentences with $\lceil \lg \xi \rceil$



Ex. 赤い シャツ は 青い シャツ ほど 安くない です



1.

かれ かのじょ せ ひく (彼 / 彼女 /背 が 低 い) (he / her / short)



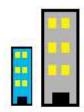
2.





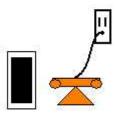
3.

あお いろ たか (青いビル / ねずみ 色 のビル / 高 い) <u>**⁹</u> (blue building / gray building / tall)



4.

でんわ でんわ (こてい 電話 /けいたい 電話 /べんり) (house phone / cell phone / convenient)



5.



6._____ あか みどりいろ (赤いボール/ 緑 色 のボール/小きい)

(red ball / green ball / small)

7. __________

Some guy's pro tip #69:

たか

「高い」 means 'tall' or 'high,' but when used in reference to prices, it takes on the meaning of 'expensive.'

ほう

And finally, we'll take a look at our last way to compare things with 「の 方 が.」

Our structure will look something like this:

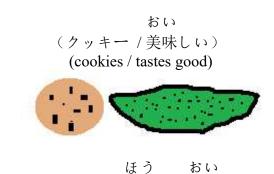
ほう [object 1] より(も)[object 2] の 方 が [adjective] です。
$$\underline{\star}^{70}$$

This structure is quite a bit longer and appears to be a little more complicated than the other two, so let's break it down a little bit. Also, please note that the $\lceil t \rfloor$ in $\lceil t \rceil t \rfloor$ is optional.

First of all, we don't actually need the '[object 1] $\sharp \emptyset$ (\sharp) ' part of our sentence to compare two things. For example, using the pictures below, we can say.

かれ ほう せ たか Ex. 彼 の 方 が 背 が 高 い です。 Kare no hou ga se ga takai desu. He is taller (than her).

Or



Ex. クッキー の 方 が 美味しい です。 Kukkii no hou ga oishii desu. Cookies taste better (than goya).

It's obvious, since we are looking at the pictures, that we are comparing his height vs. her height, and the deliciousness of cookies vs. $\vec{r} - \vec{r}$ (A.K.A. bitter melon).

But sometimes, for the sake of clarity, we'll want to include in our sentence the two things being compared.

Our above examples would now look like the following:

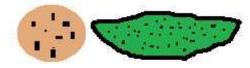
かのじょ かれ せ たか (彼女 / 彼 / 背 が 高 い) (her/he/tall)



かのじょ かれ ほう せ たか Ex. 彼女 より(も) 彼 の 方 が 背 が 高 いです。 Kanojo yori(mo) kare no hou ga se ga takai desu. Compared with her, he is taller.

And

おい (ゴーヤ / クッキー / 美味しい) (bitter melon / cookies / tastes good)



ほう おい Ex. ゴーヤ より(も) クッキー の 方 が 美味しい です。

Gooya yori(mo) kukkii no hou ga oishii desu. Compared with bitter melon, cookies tastes better.

Some guy's pro tip #70:

It's also worth mentioning that we can switch the two objects being compared around and say:

ほう

'[object 2] の 方 が [object 1] より(も) [adjective]'

かれ ほう かのじょ せ たか

Ex. 彼 の 方 が 彼女 より(も) 背 が 高 い です。

Kare no hou ga kanojo yori(mo) se ga takai desu.

He is taller than her.

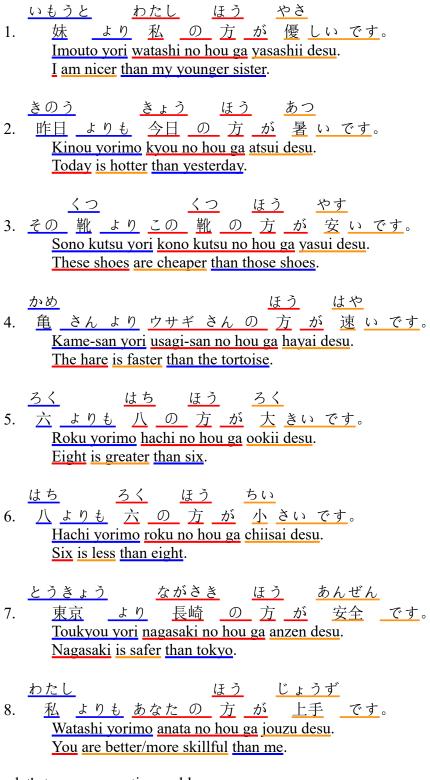
ほうおい

Ex. クッキー の 方 が ゴーヤ より(も) 美味しい です。

Kukkii no hou ga gooya yori(mo) oishii desu.

Cookies taste better than gooya.

Again, using the example sentences from before, let's check out some sentences using this comparison method.



Now let's try some practice problems.

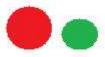
Practice problems:

Using the three methods we learned to compare things, write three sentences for each picture.

In the first blank use the '[object 1] t [object 2] t 0 (t) [adjective] t structure.

In the second blank use '[object 1] は [object 2] ほど [ない-adjective] です' structure.

ほう In the third blank use the '[object 1] より(も) [object 2] の 方 が [adjective] です' structure. Example:



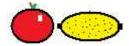
 みどり 色 の ボール は 赤い ボール より 小さい です
 。

 赤い ボール は みどり色 の ボール ほど 小さくない です
 。

 赤い ボール より みどり色 の ボール の 方 が 小さい です
 。

1.

(りんご /レモン / すっぱい) (apple / lemon / sour)

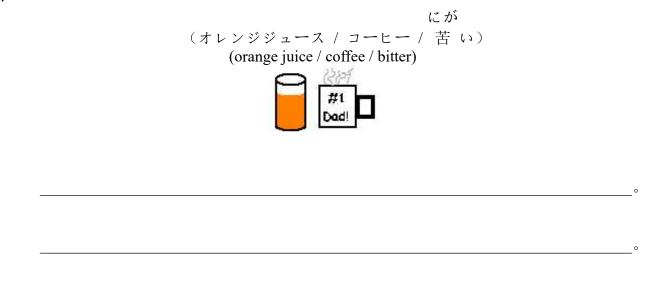


3.

にほん ひろ (日本 /アメリカ / 広 い) (Japan / America / big)



4.



Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- There are three common structures used to compare objects
- Including the 「₺」 in 「よりも」 is optional
- When using $\lceil \lg \mathcal{E} \rfloor$ we want to use the negative form of our adjective

Chapter 48: Trying things with 「~てみる」

This structure carries the meaning of 'to try to do something,' but not in the same sense as "I'll try not to be late for work anymore." It carries a light meaning, as if you're going to do something for fun or to test something out.

Let's look at some examples conjugations. After conjugating our dictionary form verb to its proper \mathcal{T} -form, we simply add $[\mathcal{A} \mathcal{S}]$ to complete our conjugation.

Dictionary form		<u>て-form</u>		<u>~てみる</u>
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べて	\rightarrow	食べてみる (to try and eat)
く 来る (to come)	\rightarrow	き 来て	\rightarrow	き 来てみる (to try and come)
の 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow	飲んで	\rightarrow	飲んでみる (to try and drink)
か 買う (to buy)	\rightarrow	買って	\rightarrow	買ってみる (to try and buy)

Try a few on your own:

Dictionary form		<u>て-form</u>		<u>~てみる</u>
い 1. 行く (to go)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
み 2. 見る (to watch)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
と 3. 飛ぶ (to fly)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
かんが 4. 考 える (to think)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
おぼ 5. 覚える (to remember)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

Though you've probably already realized it, it is important to note that the $\lceil 3 \rceil$ in $\lceil \sim 7 \rceil$ is in the dictionary form (notice the final $\lceil 3 \rceil$ character) and is a Type II verb. Therefore, all of the standard rules of conjugation apply to it.

Let's look at some example sentences:

おい <u>た</u>

1. この ケーキ は 美味しい です よ。食べてみて。

Kono keeki ha oishii desu yo. <u>Tabetemite</u>.

This cake is delicious. Try some.

ほん おもしろ よ

2. この 本 は とても 面白 い です。読んでみて ください。

Kono hon ha totemo omoshiroi desu. Yondemite kudasai.

This book is great. Please, check it out.

ほん よ むずか

3. その 本 を 読んでみた けど 難 しすぎた。

Sono hon wo yondemita kedo muzukashisugita.

I gave that book a read, but it was too difficult.

<u>い</u> 4. その ジム に 行ってみる。

Sono jimu ni ittemiru.

I'm going to check out that gym.

()

5. カラオケ に 行ってみた けど 好き で は なかった。

Karaoke ni ittemita kedo suki de ha nakatta.

I went and tried out karaoke, but I didn't like it.

わたし おきなわ い

6. 私 は 沖縄 に 行ってみたい です。

Watashi ha Okinawa ni ittemitai desu.

I would like to go to Okinawa.

わたし い くに

7. 私 は行ってみたい 国 がたくさんある。

Watashi ha ittemitai kuni ga takusan aru.

There are many countries <u>I'd like to go</u> to.

やたわす

8. すし屋で うにを食べてみる つもりだったけど 忘れた。

Sushiya de uni wo tabetemiru tsumori datta kedo wasureta.

At the sushi restaurant, I was planning on trying the sea urchin, but I forgot.

Now	let's	try	some	practice	problems.

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks with the g	given verbs in the	eir correct てみ	る-forms.
-------------------------------	--------------------	----------------	----------

Ex. I want to check out that movie.

1. I love this song. Give it a listen.

2. I would like to go to Japan.

3. I tried that sushi, but I didn't like it.

4. I don't like karaoke, but I'll try singing.

5. Please give studying Japanese a try.

6. This recipe looks good. I'm going to try making it later.

7. I want to try plum wine.

Chapter Summary:

Let's see what we learned in this chapter:

- We can append $\lceil 3 \rceil$ to the \rceil -form of any Type I, II or III verb
- The $\lceil \sim 7 \ \beta \ \rfloor$ structure expresses a meaning of trying or testing something out
- We can conjugate the $\lceil \beta \delta \rfloor$ in $\lceil \sim 7 \beta \delta \rfloor$ like any Type II verb

Chapter 49: Describing how things look/sound/seem with $\lceil \sim \vec{\tau} \ \vec{\jmath} \ \rfloor$

In English, there are a number of ways to describe how something appears to be, based on some observation we make through one of our senses.

We might say, "He seems like a nice guy," or "That looks expensive!"

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at one of the ways we can accomplish this in Japanese with $\lceil \not \in \not \supset . \rfloor$

This grammar structure can *seem* a little tricky at first (pun intended), but it will definitely test your understanding of the finer details regarding how before sadjectives, adjectives and verbs work. So we'll take it nice and slow before bringing it all together.

First, let's take a look at how to use $\lceil \vec{e} \vec{j} \rfloor$ with ι_1 -adjectives.

To begin, we'll see how to properly conjugate them. All we have to do is drop the final $\lceil \iota \iota \rfloor$ character and add $\lceil \not \in \mathcal{I}$.

43-adjective	drop [63]	add「そう」
たか 高い (expensive) →	高↔ →	高そう (looks/sounds/seems expensive)
おも 重い (heavy) →	重 ↓ →	重そう (looks/sounds/seems heavy)
むずか 難 しい (difficult)→	難し い →	難しそう (looks/sounds/seems difficult)
やす 安い (cheap) →	安 ↓ →	安そう (looks/sounds/seems cheap)
きむ 寒い (cold) →	寒 ↓ →	寒そう (looks/sounds/seems cold)
たの 楽 しい (fun) →	楽し い →	楽しそう (looks/sounds/seems fun)

Try a few on your own:

~そう 43-adjective やさ 1. 優 しい (nice) あつ 2. 暑い (hot) あま 3. 甘い (sweet) にが 4. 苦い (bitter)

Now, lets take a look at some example sentences using our 13-adjectives:

ゆびわ たか か 1. この 指輪 は <u>高</u> <u>そう</u>! どこ で 買った の?

ちか

5. 近い (close)

Kono yubiwa ha takasou! Doko de katta no? This ring looks expensive! Where did you buy it?

にもつ てつだ おも 2. あなた の 荷物 は 重 <u>そう</u> です。 手伝 いましょう か?

Anata no nimotsu ha omosou desu. Tetsudaimashou ka? Your bags <u>look heavy</u>. Can I give you a hand?

わたし さむ 61

寒 そ<u>う</u> です。 3. は ロシア に 行った こと は ない が とても Watashi ha roshia ni itta koto ha nai ga totemo samusou desu. I've never been to Russia, but it <u>looks/seems</u> really <u>cold</u>.

いた

わたし たの

4. その ゲーム は 楽 しそう。 私 もやってみたいです。

> Sono geemu ha tanoshisou. Watashi mo yattemitai desu. That game looks fun. I want to try it, too.

とき 5. あなた が 転 んだ 時 は 痛 そう だった。

Anata ga koronda toki ha itasou datta.

ころ

The time when you fell down looked like it hurt.

あま

6. その ケーキ は <u>甘 そう</u> だ。

Sono keeki ha <u>amasou</u> da. That cake looks sweet.

から

7. その カレー は 辛 そう です。

Sono karee ha karasou desu.

That curry looks spicy.

ゆうえんち おお

8. A: 遊園地 には 大きなジェットコースターがあるよ。

Yuuenchi niha ookina jettocoosutaa ga aru yo.

There is a huge roller coaster at the amusement park.

たの

B: 楽 <u>しそう</u>!

Tanoshisou!

Sounds fun!

Now let's take a look at how $\lceil \vec{e} \rceil$ works with $\not a$ -adjectives.

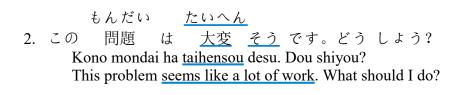
 α -adjectives are a bit simpler than α -adjectives because we don't have to conjugate anything. We simply append $[\vec{e}, \vec{o}]$ as is, and we're done.

~そう な-adjective かんたん 簡単 簡単そう (looks/sounds/seems simple) (simple) ひま 暇そう (looks/sounds/seems not busy/free) 暇 (not busy/free) げんき 元気 (energetic) 元気そう (looks/sounds/seems energetic) だいじ 大事 (important) 大事そう (looks/sounds/seems important)

And here are a few example sentences using our &-adjectives for us to take a look at:

にほんご <u>かんたん</u> じつ むずか

1. 日本語 は <u>簡単 そう</u> だ けど、実 は とても 難 しい です。 Nihongo ha <u>kantansou</u> da kedo, jitsuha totemo muzukashii desu. Japanese <u>looks easy</u>, but actually, it's really hard.



まち <u>しず</u> か 3. この 町 は <u>静 かそう だった</u> から この アパート を 借りる こと に した。 Kono machi ha <u>shizukasou datta</u> kara kono apaato wo kariru koto ni shita.

This town seemed quiet, so I decided to rent an apartment here.

みせ <u>ひま</u>

4. あの 店 は 暇 そう だね。

Ano mise ha himasou da ne.

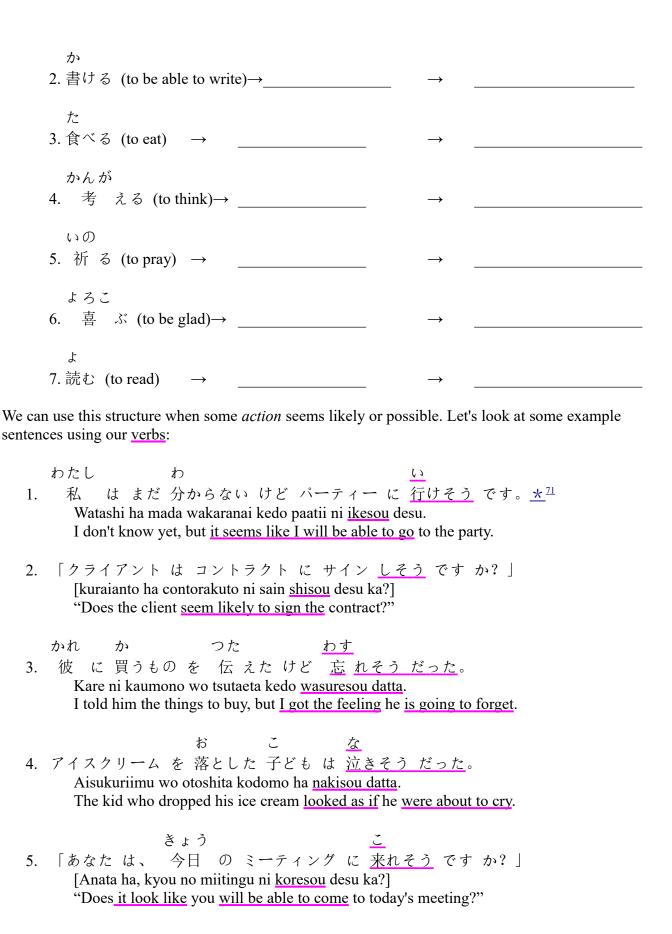
That shop doesn't look busy, does it.

Now we're one step closer to mastering $\lceil \vec{e} \vec{j} . \rfloor$ For our next lesson, we're going to see how to use $\lceil \vec{e} \vec{j} . \rfloor$ in conjunction with verbs.

When we want to couple $\lceil \vec{e} \rceil$ with a verb, we simply append it to the $\sharp \ \ \ \ \ \ \$ t-stem. Like so:

Dictionary form	<u>ます-form</u>	<u>~そう</u>
する (to do) →	l ‡‡ →	しそう (looks/sounds/seems like will do)
な 泣く (to cry) →	泣き ます →	泣きそう (looks/sounds/seems like will cry)
おこ 怒 る (to get mad) →	怒り ます →	怒りそう (looks/sounds/seems will get mad)
わす 忘 れる (to forget) →	忘れ ます →	忘れそう (looks/sounds/seems will forget)
く 来る (to come) →	き 来 ます →	き 来そう (looks/sounds/seems like will come)

Dictionary form	<u>ます-form</u>	<u>~₹·</u>	<u> </u>
ζ,			
1. 行ける (to be able to go)→		→	



Some guy's pro tip #71:

In this sentence we are appending 「そう」 to the potential form of 「行く」 (to go), which is 「行ける」 (able to go), to get 'looks/sounds/seems able to go.' We can append 「そう」 to a verb in *any* form as long as we use that form's ます-stem as the base.

You may be wondering about what to do with nouns. The quick answer is that we don't use $\lceil \vec{\epsilon} \rceil$ with nouns. If we want to describe a noun, we can use $\lceil \sim \beta \not\sim \beta \rceil$ instead.

Anata ha anata no otousan mitai desu.

You are like your father.

Congratulations! You are now an expert with $\lceil \vec{e} \vec{j} \rfloor$... almost.

You can now easily explain how something looks, sounds, or seems, but what do we do if we want to describe how something *doesn't* look, sound, or seem?

Accomplishing this is a bit trickier than what we studied in the previous section, which is why I decided to teach them separately.

And just like before, we'll start by looking at our 63-adjectives.

This conjugation to the negative form can be done in three steps:

- 1. conjugate the い-adjective to its ない-form
- 2. drop 「ない」
- 3. add 「なさそう」

Here are a few examples:

<u> </u>	ない-form	<u>+なさそう</u>
たか 高 い (high) →	高く ない →	高くなさそう (not seem high)
おも 重い (heavy)>	重く ない →	重くなさそう (not seem heavy)
むずか 難 しい (difficult)→	難しく ない →	難しくなさそう (not seem difficult)
やす 安い (cheap) →	安く ない →	安くなさそう (not seem cheap)

きむ 寒 い (cold)
$$\rightarrow$$
 寒く~~ない~~ \rightarrow 寒くなさそう (not seem cold) たの 楽 しい (fun) \rightarrow 楽しくなさそう (not seem fun)

Try a few yourself, to get the hang of it. As you write, also practice saying the word out loud. It may take some time before your tongue gets used to these new linguistical acrobatics.

<u>13-adjective</u>		ない-form		<u>~なさそう</u>
やさ 1. 優 しい (nice)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
あつ 2. 暑い (hot)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
いた 3. 痛い (painful)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
かる 4. 軽い (light)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	
くら 5. 暗い (dark)	\rightarrow		\rightarrow	

Excellent. Now, let's take a look at some example sentences using our negative <u>\(\cdot\)-adjectives:</u>

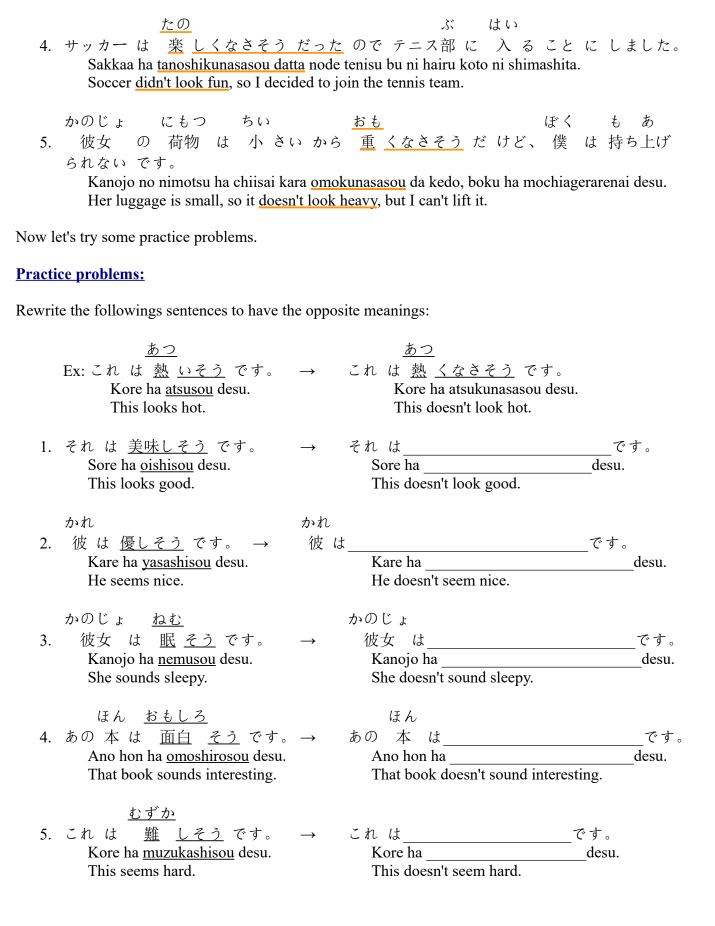
1. この 映画 は あんまり 面白 くなさそう です。

Kono eiga ha anmari <u>omoshirokunasasou</u> desu.

This movie doesn't look very good.

2. 外 は <u>寒 くなさそう だった</u> から 半 そで で 家 を 出ました。 Soto ha <u>samukunasasou datta</u> kara hansoude de ie wo demashita. It didn't look cold outside, so I went out in a half-sleeve shirt.

3. この 腕時計 は <u>高 くなさそう</u> です が100 万 円 だった よ。 Kono udedokei ha takakunasasou desu ga hyaku man en datta yo. This watch doesn't look expensive, but it cost one million yen, ya know.



Good job! Now let's take a look at our な-adjectives:

Unfortunately, this time around, they aren't as straightforward as before.

The conjugation to the negative form requires three steps:

- 1. Conjugate the な-adjective to its ない-form
- 2. Drop「ない」
- 3. Add 「なさそう」

<u>な-adjective</u>	<u>ない-form</u>		<u>+なさそう</u>
かんたん 簡単 (easy) →	簡単では ない	\rightarrow	簡単ではなさそう (not appear easy)
ひま 暇 (free) →	暇では ない	\rightarrow	暇ではなさそう (not appear free)
たいせつ 大切 (important)→	大切では ない	\rightarrow	大切ではなさそう (not appear important)
あんぜん 安全 (safe) →	安全では ない	\rightarrow	安全ではなさそう (not appear safe)

Practice a few yourself. First, conjugate the verb to its x : -1 form and then to its x : -1 form.

<u>な-adjective</u>	ない-form	<u>~なさそう</u>
たいへん 1. 大変 (problematic) →	<i>→</i>	
2. きれい (pretty) →	<i>→</i>	
しず 3. 静 か (quiet) →	<i>→</i>	
げんき 4. 元気 (healthy) →		
べんり 5. 便利 (convenient) →		

Let's take a look at some example sentences using our negative <u>&-adjectives</u>:

み くに けしき

1. ネット で 見た けど その 国 の 景色 は きれいでは なさそう だ。

Netto de mita kedo sono kuni no keshiki ha kireideha nasasou da.

I looked it up on the internet, but that country's landscape didn't seem very beautiful.

たいへん

2. ハイキング トレール A は 大変 では なさそう です。それ に しょう。

Haikingu toreeru A ha taihen deha nasasou desu. Sore ni shiyou.

Hiking trail A doesn't seem too hard. Let's hike that one.

くるま べんり おお

は かっこいい けど 便利 では なさそう です。 大 きすぎる。

Kono kuruma ha kakkoii kedo benrideha nasasou desu. Ookisugiru.

This car is cool, but doesn't seem very convenient. It's too big.

たなか せんしゅ かれ げんき

は 元気 では なさそう です。 彼 は 疲 れている か な。 x^{2} 田中 Tanaka-senshu ha genki deha nasasou desu. Kare ha tsukareteiru ka na.

Tanaka doesn't look very good. I wonder if he's tired.

<u>かんたん</u> はか <u>簡単 では なさそう</u> です。 他 の 5. これ は 子ども 向け の ゲーム だ けど、 ほう か おも

方がいいと思います。 ゲーム を 買った

Kore ha kodomo muke no geemu da kedo, kantandeha nasasoudesu. Hoka no geemu wo katta hou ga ii to omoimasu.

This is a game made for children, but it doesn't look very easy. I think you should buy a different one.

Some guy's pro tip #72:

せんしゅ さま

選手 」 is an honorific, like 「さん」 or 「 様 ,」 that is appended to the names of athletes.

Now, let's take a look at our verbs.

We are nearing the end of our adventure, but don't worry. I didn't save the hardest for last. If you've been able to keep up and make it this far, this last bit will be a walk in the park.

When we want to describe how something seems to be, all we have to do is append $\lceil \vec{e} \rceil$ to the \sharp t-stem of our verb.

Here is an example to demonstrate the difference.

Just to clarify, here's how our conjugation goes:

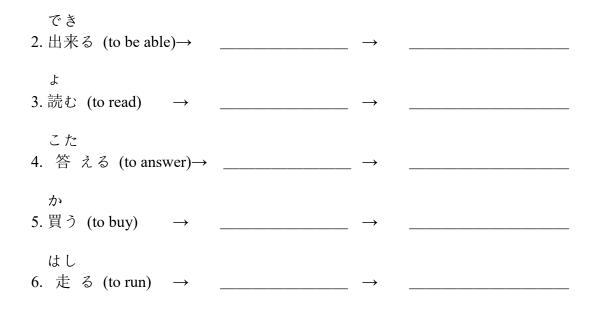
- 1. Conjugate the verb to its \sharp \sharp -stem
- 2. Append 「そうもない」

Let's look at a few example conjugations:

Dictionary form		<u>ます-form</u>		\sim そう も ない
し 死ぬ (to die)	\rightarrow	死に ます	\rightarrow	死にそうもない (not seem to die)
な 泣く(to cry)	\rightarrow	泣き ます	\rightarrow	泣きそうもない (not seem to cry)
お 落ちる(to fall)	\rightarrow	落ち ます	\rightarrow	落ちそうもない (not seem to fal)
か 勝つ (to win)	\rightarrow	勝ち ます	\rightarrow	勝ちそうもない (not seem to win)
する (to do)	\rightarrow	します	\rightarrow	しそう も ない (not seem to do)

Try a few yourself. First, conjugate the given verb to its \sharp \dagger -form. Then, to its $\xi \ni \iota$ ι -form.

Dictionary form		<u>ます-form</u>		<u>~そうもない</u>	
た 1. 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow		<i>→</i>		



Now let's check out some example sentences using our verbs:

1. うち の ワンちゃん は この えさ を 食べそうもない。 **

Uchi no wanchan ha kono esa wo tabesou mo nai.

It doesn't seem like my dog will eat this dog food.

わたし ひとり <u>でき</u> だれ たす 2. 私 は 一人 で この プロジェクト を <u>出来そうもない</u> です。 誰 か 助 けて ください。

Watashi ha hitori de kono purojekuto wo <u>dekisoumonai</u> desu. Dareka tasukete kudasai. <u>It doesn't seem like</u> I'll <u>be able to do</u> this project by myself. Someone please help me.

かれ しんぶん よ

3. 彼 は 新聞 を <u>読めそうもない</u> です。

Kare ha shinbun wo yomesoumonai desu.

It doesn't look like he is able to read the newspaper.

4. 誰 も この 問題 に <u>答</u> <u>えそうもない</u> です。 難 しすぎます。

Daremo kono mondai ni <u>kotaesoumonai</u> desu. Muzukashisugimasu. It doesn't look like anyone will answer this problem. It's too hard.

ゆき ふ

5. 雪が降りそうもないです。

Yuki ga furisoumonai desu.

It doesn't look like it's going to snow.

6. びんぼう な 彼 は これ を 買いそうもない です。

Binbou na kare ha kore wo kaisoumonai desu.

He doesn't have much money, so he probably won't buy this.

7. 足をけがした子は 走られそうもないです。

Ashi wo kega shita ko ha hashiraresoumonai desu.

The kid who hurt his foot doesn't look like he can run.

Some guy's pro tip #73:

In Japanese, dogs don't say 'bark,' 'woof', or 'bow-wow.' They say $\lceil \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{P} \times ! \rfloor$ which is where $\lceil \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{P} \rfloor$ comes from.

Here's an interesting list of what animals 'say' in Japanese (my personal favorite is the rooster).

$$Cat \Rightarrow \exists \forall \neg$$
 Bird \Rightarrow \mathcal{L}' \sigma' \mathcal{L}' \Rightarrow \Rightarrow

Now, let's culminate everything we just learned about $\lceil \vec{z} \vec{j} \rfloor$ and try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Translate the following sentences into Japanese using the given words in parentheses.

Ex. Chess looks interesting. (チェス / 面白 い)

1. That looks fun! (それ / 楽 しい)

2.	かれ かな He sounds sad. (彼 / 悲しい)
3.	から This doesn't look spicy. (これ / 辛 い)
4.	いた Rugby looks painful! (ラグビー / 痛 い)
5.	いた Golf doesn't look painful.(ゴルフ / 痛 い)
6.	いす じょうぶ This chair looks sturdy.(この 椅子 / 丈夫)
7.	たいへん That sounds terrible.(それ / 大変)
8.	ゆき ふ It looks like it's going to snow.(雪 /降る)
9.	ゆき ふ It doesn't look like it's going to snow. (雪 /降る)
10.	あか な The baby looks like it's going to cry.(赤 ちゃん / 泣く)

```
とうきょう しず
11. Tokyo doesn't seem very quiet.(東京 / 静 か)

たの
12. That doesn't look fun.(それ / 楽 しい)

にほんご かんたん
13. Japanese seems easy.(日本語 / 簡単 )

えいご かんたん
14. English doesn't seem easy.(英語 / 簡単 )
```

Chapter Summary:

Let's see what we learned in this chapter:

- We use 「そう」 in conjunction with adjectives and verbs to describe how something looks, sounds or seems
- To use 「そう」 with our い-adjectives, we simply drop the trailing 「い」 and add 「そう」
- To use $\lceil \vec{e} \vec{j} \rfloor$ with our \vec{c} -adjectives, we simply append $\lceil \vec{e} \vec{j} \rfloor$ to the adjective as is
- To use $\lceil \vec{e} \cdot \vec{j} \rfloor$ with our verbs, we simply append $\lceil \vec{e} \cdot \vec{j} \rfloor$ to the verb's $\sharp \ \vec{j}$ -stem
- To use 「そう」 with the ない-form of our い-adjectives, we just drop 「ない」 and add 「なさ そう」
- To use 「そう」 with the ない-form of our な-adjectives, we need to replace 「ではない」 with 「でなさそう」
- To use 「そう」 with the ない-form of our verbs, we append 「そう も ない」 to the verb's ます-stem
- We don't use 「そう」 in conjunction with nouns

Chapter 50: 'While ~' with「~ながら」

I really like this grammar point, because while being easy to use and understand, it is also extremely useful for everyday conversation. Knowing and understanding how to use $\lceil \sim 2 \, \text{mbs} \rfloor$ will allow us to express ourselves not only much more easily, but more naturally as well.

So, let's get started!

Often times, we want to express something involving two actions occurring at the same time. For example, 'I listened to music while watching TV,' or 'I ate dinner while studying.'

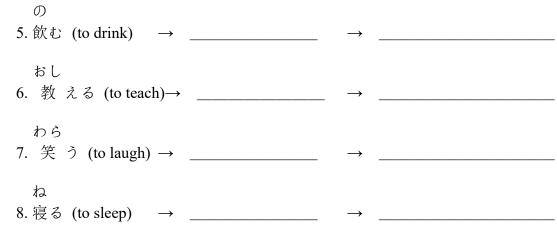
To express this in Japanese, all we need to do is append $\lceil \alpha \not n \beta \rfloor$ to the $\sharp \tau$ -stem of our verb.

Here are a few examples conjugations. Notice, the conjugation is the same for Type I, II and III verbs:

Dictionary form	<u>ます-form</u>	<u>~ながら</u>	
する (to do) →	します・	→ しながら (while doing)
た 食べる (to eat) →	食べ ます -	→ 食べながら	(while eating)
はな 話 す (to talk) →	話し ます	→ 話しながら	(while talking)
かんが 考 える (to think)-	→ 考え ます .	→ 考えながら	(while thinking)

Try a few for yourself:

Dictionary form	<u>ます-form</u>	<u>~ながら</u>
く 1. 来る (to come)	→	→
の 2. 乗る (to ride)	→	→
な 3. 泣く (to cry)	→	→
うた 4. 歌 う (to sing)	→	→



Now let's check out a few example sentences:

わたし おんがく <u>き</u> み 1. 私 は 音楽 を 聞きながら テレビ を 見ました。 Watashi ha ongaku wo <u>kikinagara</u> terebi wo mimashita. While listening to music, I watched T.V.

わたし <u>べんきょう</u> ばんごはん た
2. 私 は <u>勉強 しながら</u> 晩御飯 を 食べます。
Watashi ha <u>benkyou shinagara</u> bangohan wo tabemasu.
While studying, I eat dinner.

かのじょ <u>な</u> てがみ か 3. 彼女 は <u>泣きながら</u> 手紙 を 書いた。 Kanojo ha <u>nakinagara</u> tegami wo kaita. While crying, she wrote a letter.

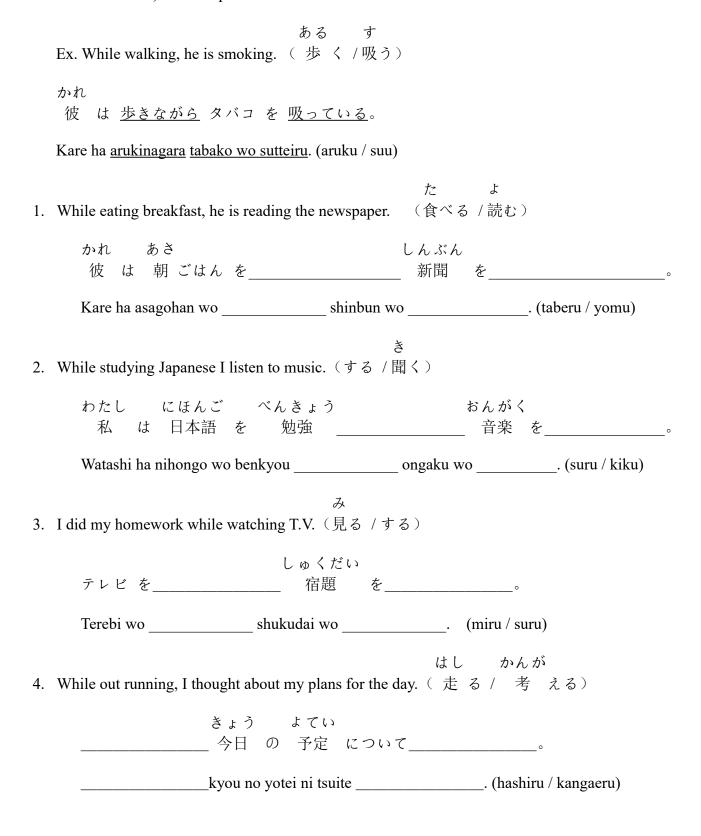
かれ <u>うた</u> おど
4. 彼 は カラオケ で <u>歌 いながら</u> 踊 っていた。
Kare ha karaoke de <u>utainagara</u> odotteita.
He danced <u>while singing</u> karaoke.

がくせい <u>かんが</u>
5. その 学生 は <u>考 えながら</u> ためいき を ついた。
Sono gakusei ga <u>kangaenagara</u> tameiki wo tsuita.
While thinking, that student let out a sigh.

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Translate the following sentences into Japanese by conjugating the given verbs in parentheses (pay attention to the tenses!). Use the polite form of the verb.



の	ょ

5. While drinking coffee I read a book. (飲む / 読む)

	はん			
コーヒー を	 本	を	0	

6. While listening to the lecture, I drew pictures. (聞く / 描 く)

Chapter Summary:

Let's see what we learned in this chapter:

- We append $\lceil \dot{\alpha} \, \dot{m} \, \dot{\beta} \rfloor$ to the $\dot{\xi} \, \dot{\tau}$ -stem of our verbs to express two actions that are happening simultaneously
- This grammar structure works for all Type I, II and III verbs

Chapter 51: 'Easy to ~' and 'Difficult to ~' with 「やすい」and「にくい」

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at a convenient way to describe something as being easy or difficult to do.

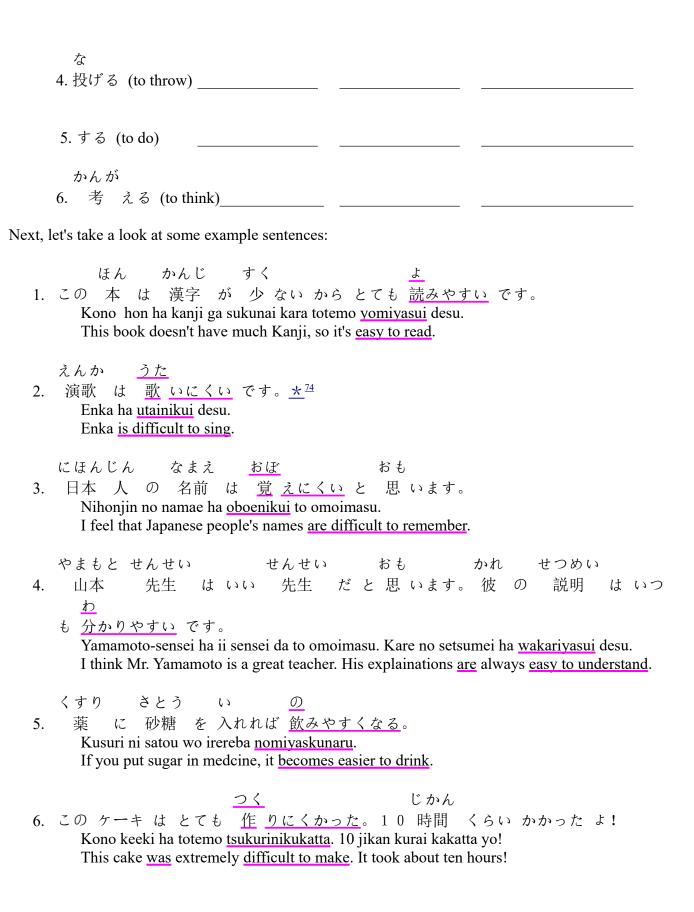
To do this, we simply append $\lceil \forall \forall i \rangle$ if something is easy or $\lceil \mathcal{C} \leqslant \wp \rceil$ if something is difficult to the $\sharp \forall$ -stem of our verb.

Let's look at some example conjugations:

Dictionary form	<u>ます-</u>	<u>stem</u>		~にくい/やすい
わ 分かる (to understand)	\rightarrow	分かり ます	= →	分かりやすい (easy to understand)
か 書く (to write)	\rightarrow	書き ます	\rightarrow	書きにくい (difficult to write)
き 聞く (to hear)	\rightarrow	聞き ます	\rightarrow	聞きやすい (easy to hear)
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読み ます	\rightarrow	読みにくい (difficult to read)
うた 歌 う (to sing)	\rightarrow	歌い ます	\rightarrow	歌いやすい (easy to sing)
おぼ 覚 える (to remember)	\rightarrow	覚え ます	\rightarrow	覚えにくい (difficult to remember)

Now you try, conjugate the following verbs to both the やすい and にくい-forms.

Dictionary form	<u>ます-stem</u>	<u>にくい-form</u>	<u>やすい-form</u>
の 1. 飲む (to drink)			
つか 2. 使 う (to use)			
つく 3. 作 る (to make)			



Kono keitai ha tsukainikui. Zenzen wakaranai.

This cell phone is hard to use. I don't get it at all.

Some guy's pro tip #74:

Enka is a traditional Japanese singing style. If you're curious, when you have some time, look it up on Youtube (but not until you finish your current study session!).

It is very important to understand that when you conjugate a verb to the $\forall j \lor i$ or $\lor \zeta \lor i$ -form, we can treat it like we would any $\lor i$ -adjective. As such, all of the same grammatical rules apply to it.

We can describe a noun:

$$b$$
 たし よ ほん す **Ex.** 私 は 読みやすい 本 が 好き です。

Watashi ha yomiyasui hon ga suki desu.

I like books that are easy to read.

In the above example we can see that 「読みやすい」is modifying 「 本 ..」

We can conjugate it to the past tense:

Ano suugaku no jyugyou ha wakarinikukatta desu.

That math lesson was hard to understand.

すうがく じゅぎょう わ
$$\mathbf{Ex.}$$
 あの 数学 の 授業 は $\mathbf{\frac{0}{0}}$ かりやすかった です。

Ano suugaku no jyugyou ha wakariyasukatta desu.

That math lesson was easy to understand.

In the above examples, we can see that just like how we conjugate an ι -adjective to the past tense, we can do the same to both $\lceil \vartheta + \iota \iota \rceil$ and $\lceil \iota \iota \iota \cdot \iota \cdot \iota \rceil$

We can also conjugate them to the ない-form:

$$\frac{L}{Ex.}$$
 これ は 子ども の マンガ だけど $読みやすくない です。$

Kore ha kodomo no manga dakedo yomiyasukunai desu.

This is a children's comic book, but it's not easy to read.

Ex. これ は 子ども の マンガ だから 読みにくくない です。 Kore ha kodomo no manga dakara yominikukunai desu. This is a children's comic book, so it's not hard to read. We can append 「なる」 to show that something *becomes* easy or difficult: べんきょう たんご おぼ 勉強 すれば する ほど 単語 が 覚 えやすくなる。 Ex. Benkyou sureba suru hodo tango ga oboeyasukunaru. The more you study, the easier it gets to remember vocabulary words. かんじ つか わ Ex. 漢字 を 使 わなければ 分かりにくくなる よ。 Kanji wo tsukawanakereba wakarinikukunaru yo. If you don't use Kanji, it will become difficult to understand. Now let's try some practice problems. **Practice problems:** Use the given words in parentheses and make sentences based on your *own* opinion. Ex. Japanese is easy/difficult to understand. (Japanese / understand) にほんご わ <u>日本語 は 分かりやすい です</u>。 (日本 /分かる) わ I don't think Japanese is so difficult, so I decided to use 「分かりやすい.」But if I thought Japanese were difficult to understand, I would say: にほんご わ Ex. 日本語 は 分かりにくい です 。 (日本語 /分かる) 1. Kanji is easy/difficult to learn. (Kanji / learn) かんじ おぼ (漢字 / 覚 える) 2. Hiragana is easy/difficult to write. (Hiragana / write)

。(ひらがな / 書く)

3. Katakana is easy/difficult to read. (Katakana / read)

よ _____。(カタカナ / 読む**)**

4. Smart phones are easy/difficult to use. (smart phone / use) $\pm \frac{75}{2}$

つか _____。(スマホ / 使 う)

5. Sushi is easy/difficult to make. (sushi / make)

つく _____。(すし / 作 る)

Some guy's pro tip #75:

Other favorite Katakana words of mine are "McDonald's" and 'Starbucks.'

McDonald's in Japanese is $\lceil \neg \not \supset \not \vdash \not \vdash \nu \not \vdash \rfloor$ (makudonarudo), which is quite a mouthful. So, it's usually just called $\lceil \neg \neg \not \supset \rfloor$ (makku).

Starbucks is 「スターバックス」 (sutaabakkusu), which is also a little 言いにくい (difficult to say). So, it's usually just called 「スタバ」 (sutaba).

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We can append $\lceil \forall t \lor \rfloor$ or $\lceil \mathcal{C} \lor \mathsf{C} \rbrace$ to the $\sharp t$ -stems of verbs to express that something is easy or difficult to do
- We treat 「やすい」 and 「にくい」 the same as we treat い-adjectives
 - We can conjugate them to the past tense form
 - o We can conjugate them to the ない-form
 - \circ We can use them to modify nouns

Chapter 52: 'Don't know whether ~ or ~' with 「~ かどうか」

This useful expression will allow us to ask complex questions, or express uncertainty or doubt. It is very similar to the English phrase "...whether or not \sim ," where ' \sim ' can be any verb, verb phrase, noun, or adjective of our choice.

What we are doing when we use this structure is taking two sentences/questions and making them into one. Let's check out a quick example.

Here we have two separate questions, asking if 'he' is going back home to America:

Kare ha amerika ni kaerimasu ka, kaerimasen ka? Anata ha sore wo shitteimasu ka? Is he going back to America, or is he not going back to America? Do you know?

If we make use of $\lceil h \not\in j h$, \rfloor however, we can turn it all into one concise question:

Do you know whether or not he's going back to America?

As you can see, the second example sentence is much shorter and 'cleaner' than the first.

Let's look at some more examples making use of this grammar structure. First, let's look at using $\lceil \mathfrak{h} \rangle$ with some of our \wp -adjectives.

The structure of our sentences will look something like this:

I don't know whether this is good or not.

3. 100 キロは 重いかどうか分かりません。
Hyakkiro ha omoi kadouka wakarimasen.
I don't know whether or not 100 kilograms is heavy.

Now, let's continue on with our な-adjectives.

Our structure is the same as with い-adjectives, and will look something like this:

[subject] は [<u>な-adjective</u>] かどうか 分からない

さかな しんせん わ

1. この 魚 は 新鮮 かどうか 分かりません。

Kono sakana ha shinsen kadouka wakarimasen.

I don't know whether this fish is fresh or not.

Nyuuyookushiti ha <u>anzen kadouka</u> wakaranai desu. I don't know whether or not New York City is safe.

かのじょ <u>げんき</u> わ

3. 彼女 は 元気 _かどうか 分かりません。

Kanojo ha genki kadouka wakarimasen.

I don't know whether she is in good health or not.

Now, let's check out our <u>verbs</u> (please notice that we aren't limited to only using 「分からない」 at the end of our sentences). Our structure this time will look something like this.

[subject] は [object] ϵ/ϵ [verb] かどうか [verb 2]

わたし えいが み おぼ

1. 私 は その 映画 を <u>見た こと が ある</u> かどうか 覚 えていません。

Watashi ha sono eiga wo mita koto ga aru kadouka oboeiteimasen.

I don't remember if I've seen that movie before or not.

かのじょ きょう <u>く</u> わ

2. まだ 彼女 は 今日 の ミーティング に 来る かどうか 分からない。

Mada kanojo ha kyou no miitingu ni kuru kadouka wakaranai.

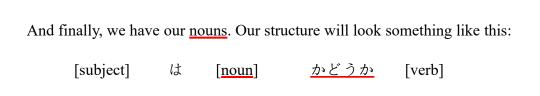
I still don't know yet if she is coming to the meeting or not.

しけん ごうかく しんぱい

3. 試験 に 合格 できる かどうか 心配 しています。

Shiken ni goukaku dekiru kadouka shinpai shiteimasu.

I'm worried about whether or not I'll be able to pass the test.



わ

じん 1. 彼 は アメリカ 人 かどうか 分からない。

Kare ha amerikajin kadouka wakaranai. I don't know if he's American or not.

かれ

にほん しら 2. これ は 日本 の ブランド かどうか 調 べている。

Kore ha nihon no burando kadouka shirabeteiru. I'm looking up whether this is a Japanese brand.

ほんもの わ 本物 _ の ダイヤモンド かどうか 分かりません。 3. これ は Kore ha honmono no daiyamondo kadouka wakarimasen.

I don't know whether this is a real diamod or not.

Of course, we're not only limited to statements. Here are some example questions:

とうきょう にほん

は 日本 に <u>ある かどうか</u> 知っています か? 東京 1. Toukyou ha nihon ni aru kadouka shitteimasu ka? Do you know if Tokyo is in Japan or not?

こんげつ たんじょび かあ 今月 かどうか 知っています か? 2. お母さんの 誕生日 は

Okaasan no tanjoubi ha kongetsu kadouka shitteimasu ka? Do you know if Mom's birthday is this month?

かれ 61

3. 彼 は パーティーに 来る かどうか 言いました か? Kare ha paatii ni kuru kadouka iimashita ka? Did he say whether or not he's coming to the party?

さむ

4. グリーンランド は 寒 い かどうか 知っています か?

Guriinrando ha samui kadouka shitteimasu ka? Do you know whether Greenland is cold or not?

L にほん あんぜん

安全 かどうか 知っています か? 日本は

Nihon ha anzen kadouka shitteimasu ka? Do you know whether or not Japan is safe? Try a few yourself.

Practice problems:

Fill in the blanks with the given word and 「かどうか」 to complete the sentences.

	ひとり	わってき
1.	一人 で	分からない。(出来る)
	Hitori de	wakaranai. (dekiru)
	I don't know if I can do it by myself.	
	りょうり	し から
2.		知っています か? (辛 い)
	Kono ryouri ha	shitteimasu ka? (karai)
	Do you know if this food is spicy?	
	もんだい	わ かんたん
3.	この 問題 は	分 かりません。(簡単)
	Kono mondai ha	
	I don't know if this problem is difficult, or no	
4.	この モデル は その モデル より	
	し べんり	
	知っています か? (便利)	
	Kono moderu ha sono moderu yori	
	shitteimasu ka? (benri)	and the o
	Do you know if this model is more convenien	nt to use than that one?
	きのう かれ ぐあい わる	きょう しごと
5.		
	<i>b</i> <	
	分からない。(来る)	
	Kinou, kare ha guai ga warukatta kara kyou s	shigoto ni
	wakaranai. (kuru)	
	He was sick yesterday, so I don't know if he's	s coming into work today.
_	19	かえ
6.	ボス は もう	
	Bosu ha mou	
	Do you know if the boss has gone home alrea	auy:

	いぬねこ	L	た
7.	犬 は 猫 のえさを	知っています か?	(食べられ
	る)		
	Inu ha neko no esa wo	shitteimasu ka? (tabera	ıreru)
	Do you know if dogs can eat cat food?	,	ŕ
	こんや	L	さむ
8.	今夜 は	知っています か?	
	Konya ha	shitteimasu ka? (samui)	
	Do you know whether or not tonight is going to be		
		わ	しず
9.	この あたり は	分かります か?(- /
	Kono atari ha	wakarimasu ka? (shi	izuka)
	Do you know if this is a quiet area or not?	,	,

Chapter Summary:

Let's see what we learned in this chapter:

- We use 「かどうか」 to take two sentences/questions and combine them into one
- We can append 「かどうか」 to our nouns, verbs and adjectives as is
- We can also ask questions using 「かどうか」

Chapter 53: Starting, continuing, or ending an action

Now, we're going to take a look at more grammars structure that utilize the \sharp \sharp -stem.

First, let's start (pun intended) by taking a look at $\lceil \sim t$ and $\lceil \sim t$ b 3.

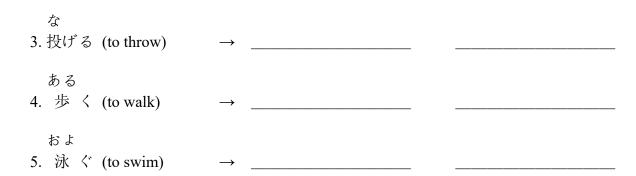
These structures mark the beginning of some action or event. To get a feel for it, let's take a look at some example conjugations.

<u>Dictionary form</u> ます-stem		<u>だす-form</u>	はじめる-form
た 食べる (to eat)→ 食べ ます	\rightarrow	食べだす	食べはじめる(to start to eat)
な 泣く (to cry) → 泣き ます	\rightarrow	泣きだす	泣きはじめる (to start to cry)
よ 読む (to read)→ 読み ます	\rightarrow	読みだす	読みはじめる (to start to read)
する (to do) → し ます	\rightarrow	しだす	しはじめる (to start to do)
はな 話 す (to speak)→ 話し ます	\rightarrow	話しだす	話しはじめる (to start to speak)

You may be wondering what the difference is between $\lceil \sim t \rceil$ and $\lceil \sim t \rceil$ Well, don't think about it too much, because they are basically the same. So you can use whichever one you prefer.

Conjugate the following verbs to their だす or はじめる-forms:

Dictionary form	<u>~だす</u>	<u>~はじめる</u>
ふ 1. 降る (to fall)	→	
な 2. 鳴る (to ring)	→	



わたし ねん まえ にほんご <u>べんきょう</u>

1. 私 は 3 年 前 日本語 を <u>勉強 しだした</u>。
Watashi ha san nen mae nihongo wo <u>benkyou shidashita</u>.
I <u>started studying</u> Japanese three years ago.

あか きゅう <u>な</u> 2. あそこ に いる 赤 ちゃん が 急 に <u>泣きはじめた</u>。 Asoko ni iru akachan ga kyuu ni <u>nakihajimeta</u>.

Asoko ni iru akachan ga kyuu ni <u>nakihajimeta</u>. That baby over there suddenly <u>started crying</u>.

えいがちゅう だれ けいたい <u>な</u>
3. 映画 中 、 誰 か の 携帯 が <u>鳴りだしました</u>。
Eigachuu, dareka no keitai ga <u>naridashimashita</u>.
During the movie, somebody's cell phone started ringing.

あと みんな ばんごはん <u>た</u>
4. スピーチ の 後 、 皆 が 晩御飯 を <u>食べはじめます</u>。
Supiichi no ato, minna ga bangohan wo <u>tabehajimemasu</u>.
After the speech, everyone will start eating dinner.

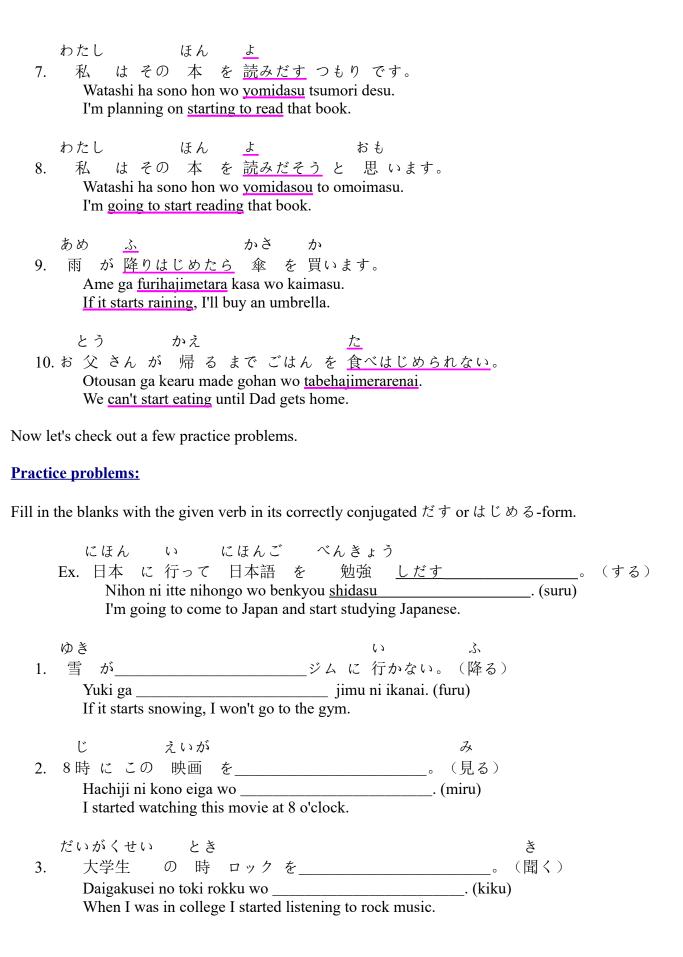
きのう かのじ あたら <u>よ</u> 5. 昨日、彼女 は 新 しい マンガ を <u>読みだしました</u>。 Kinou, Kanojo ha atarashii manga wo yomidashimashita.

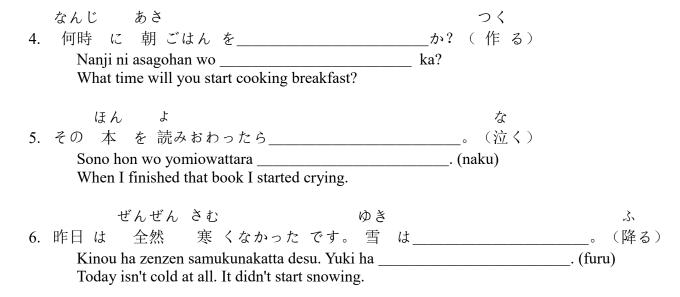
She started reading a new comic book yesterday.

あめ <u>ふ</u>

6. 雨 が <u>降りはじめそう</u> です。

Ame ga <u>furihajimesou</u> desu. It looks like it's going to <u>start raining</u>.





Continuing on (again, pun intended), let's take a look at how to describe a continuing, or ongoing action with $\lceil \sim 750 \% \delta. \rfloor$

We just learned how to describe the beginning of some action or event, but now we're going to take a look at how to describe the *continuation* of some action or event.

This structure is exactly the same as what we just learned with $\lceil \sim t \not = t / t \mid b \mid \delta, \rfloor$ except this time we are simply going to append $\lceil \supset J \mid t \mid \delta \rfloor$ to the $\sharp t$ -steam of our verb, instead.

Here are some examples using the same verbs from the previous section:

Dictionary form		<u>ます-stem</u>	<u>~つづける</u>
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べ ます →	食べつづける (to continue to eat)
な 泣く (to cry)	\rightarrow	泣き ます	泣きつづける (to continue to cry)
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読み ます	読みつづける (to continue to read)
する (to do)	\rightarrow	し ます	しつづける (to continue to do)
はな 話 す (to speak)	\rightarrow	話し ます	話しつづける (to continue to speak)

Try a few yourself:

Dictionary form	<u>ます-form</u>		<u>~つづける</u>
ふ 1. 降る (to fall) →		\rightarrow	
ひ 2. 弾く(to play guitar/pia	ano)→	→	
な 3. 鳴る (to ring) →		\rightarrow	
な 4. 投げる (to throw) →	·	\rightarrow	
ある			
およ		7	
6. 冰 ((to swim) →	·	\rightarrow	

Now let's check out some example sentences using our new grammar structure. Please note that $\lceil \circlearrowleft \circlearrowleft \rceil$ is a Type II verb in its dictionary form. Therefore, we can conjugate it using all of the structures we've seen up until now. The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

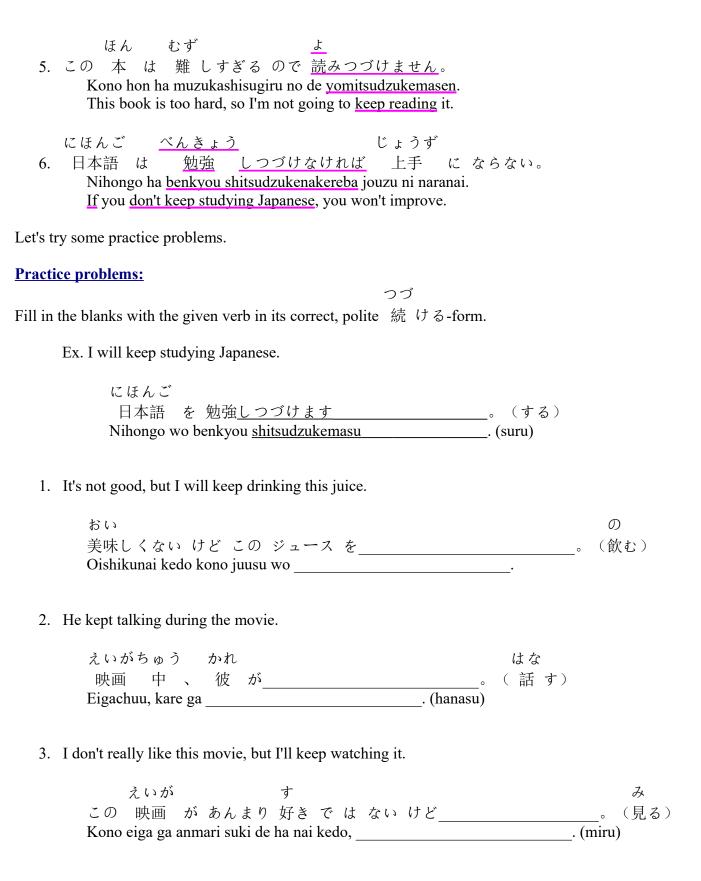
わたし つか <u>べんきょう</u>
1. 私 は 疲れているけど <u>勉強 しつづけます</u>。
Watashi ha tsukareteiru kedo <u>benkyou shitsudzukemasu</u>.
I'm tired, but I'm going to keep studying.

はら おい <u>た</u>
2. 腹 は いっぱい に なった が 美味しかった から <u>食べつづけた</u>。
Hara ha ippai ni natta ga oishikatta kara <u>tabetsudzuketa</u>.
I was full, but it was good so I kept eating.

ほん むずか <u>よ</u>
3. この 本 は 難 しい けど 読みつづける つもり です。
Kono hon ha muzukashii kedo <u>yomitsudzukeru</u> tsumori desu.
This book is hard but I plan to <u>keep reading</u> it.

わたし で <u>かんが</u>
4. 私 はいいアイデアが出るまで <u>考 えつづけます</u>。
Watashi ha ii aidea ga deru made <u>kangaetsudzukemasu</u>.

I'm going to keep thinking until I come up with a good idea.



4. It's bad for me, but I'll keep smoking.

5. Even when I turn 65, I'm going to continue working.

6. I won't continue watching T.V. until midnight.

Last up for this chapter, we're going to end with (pun intended, but I promise it's the last one) $\lceil \sim$ おわる. \rfloor

When we append $\lceil \sharp h \Im \rfloor$ to the $\sharp f$ -stem of a verb, it takes on the meaning of 'to end,' or 'to finish' doing that verb.

Let's take a look at some example conjugations:

Dictionary form		<u>ます-stem</u>		<u>~おわる</u>
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べ ます	\rightarrow	食べおわる (to finish eating)
な 泣く (to cry)	\rightarrow	泣き ます	\rightarrow	泣きおわる (to finish crying)
よ 読む (to read)	\rightarrow	読み ます	\rightarrow	読みおわる (to finish reading)
する (to do)	\rightarrow	し ます	\rightarrow	しおわる (to finish doing)
はな 話 す (to speak)	\rightarrow	話し ます	\rightarrow	話しおわる (to finish speaking)

Try conjugating a few verbs yourself to the おわる-form:

Dictionary form	<u>ます-form</u>		<u>~おわる</u>
ふ 1. 降る (to fall) →		\rightarrow	
ひ 2. 弾く (to play piano/gui	tar)→	\rightarrow	
な 3. 鳴る (to ring) →		\rightarrow	
な 4. 投げる (to throw) →		\rightarrow	
ある 5. 歩く (to walk) →		\rightarrow	
およ 6. 泳ぐ (to swim) →		\rightarrow	

じ ほん <u>よ</u>
1. 7時 までに この 本 を <u>読みおわります</u>。
Shichiji made ni kono hon wo <u>yomiowarimasu</u>.
I'll <u>finish reading</u> this book by seven o'clock.

あめ <u>ふ</u> さんぽ

2. 雨 が <u>降りおわったら</u> 散歩 する つもり です。
Ame ga <u>furiowattara</u> sanpo suru tsumori desu.

When it stops raining, I'm planning on taking a walk.

しゅくだい 3. やっと 宿題 を <u>しおわりました</u>。テレビゲーム を しょう!

Yatto shukudai wo <u>shiowarimashita</u>. Terebigeemu wo shiyou! I finally <u>finished my homeowrk</u>. Now, I'm going to play some video games!

た 4. ばんごはん を 食べおわったら デザート を 食べます。 Bangohan wo tabeowattara dezaato wo tabemasu. After I finish eating dinner, I'm going to have dessert.

そうじ ね 5. 掃除 <u>をしおわったら</u> 寝ます。 <u>Souji wo shiowattar</u> a nemasu. <u>When I finish cleaning</u> , I'm going to sleep.
こた か ひと かえ 6. 先生: 「 答 え を 書きおわった 人 は 帰 られます。」 Sensei: [Kotae wo kakiowatta hito ha kaeraremasu.] The teacher: "Those who have finished writing the answers may go home."
Now let's check out some practice problems.
Practice problems:
Fill in the blanks with the given verb in its correctly conjugated おわる-form.
Ex. When I finish reading this book, I'm going to go to sleep.
ほん ね よこの 本 を <u>読みおわったら</u> 寝ます。(読む) Kono hon wo <u>yomiowattara</u> nemasu. (yomu)
1. I started reading this book last year, but I didn't finish it.
きょねん ほん よ よ ま年 、この 本 を 読みだした けど。(読む) Kyonen, kono hon wo yomidashita kedo
2. After we finish eating lunch, let's have dessert.
た た 「ランチ をデザート を 食べよう。」(食べる) [Ranchi wodezaato wo tabeyou.] (taberu)
3. I'll finish studying by 8 o'clock.
じ べんきょう 8時 までに 勉強。(する) Hachiji madeni benkyou (suru)

4. Until I finish writing this report, I will keep working.

	はたら	か
この レポート を	まで 働 きつづけます 。	(書く)
Kono repooto wo	made hatarakitsudzukemasu.	

5. After I finish practicing, I'll go.

Chapter Summary:

Let's see what we learned in this chapter:

- We can append「だす」or「はじめる」to the ます-stem of our verbs to express the start or beginning of some action
- We can append $\lceil \neg \neg \forall t \ \exists \rfloor$ to the $\sharp \ t$ -stem of our verbs to express the continuation of some action
- We can append $\lceil \sharp h \rbrace \rfloor$ to the $\sharp f$ -stem of our verbs to express the ending of some action
- When a verb is appended with 「だす,」「はじめる,」「つづける」or 「おわる,」they are in their dictionary forms and can be conjugated accordingly

Chapter 54: Making decisions with 「~こと に する」

When we want to talk about a decision that was made by the subject's own volition, we can use this handy structure.

It's pretty straightforward, but let's check out some example conjugations.

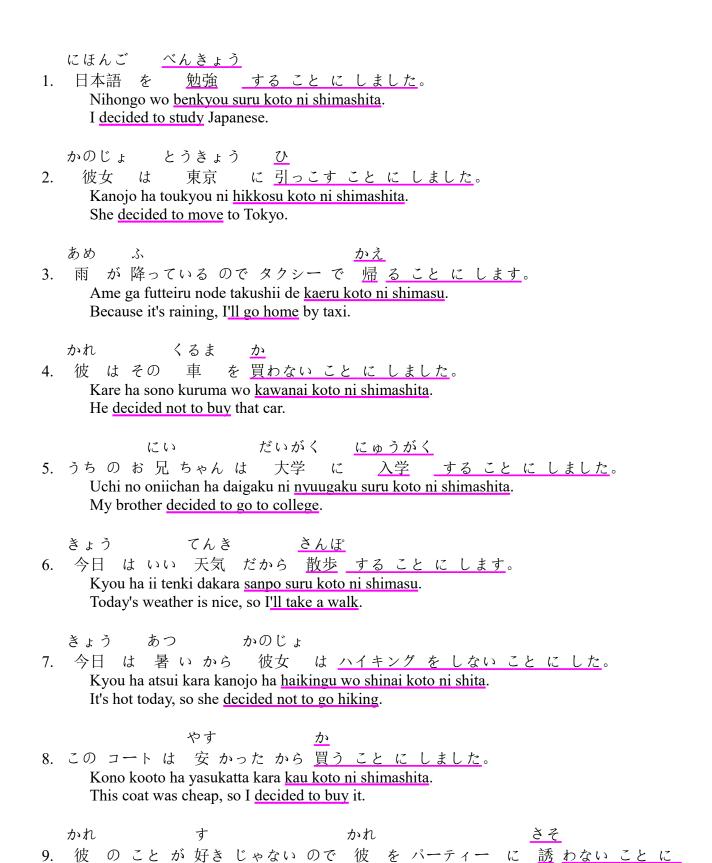
Dictionary form		<u>~こと に する</u>
する (to do)	\rightarrow	する こと に する (to decide to do)
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べる こと にする (to decide to eat)
き 聞く (to ask)	\rightarrow	聞く こと に する (to decide to ask)
ある 歩く (to walk)	\rightarrow	歩くことに する (to decide to walk)
の 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow	飲む こと に する (to decide to drink)
はな 話 す (to speak)	\rightarrow	話す こと に する (to decide to speak)
Dictionary form		ない-form + こと に する
する (to do)	\rightarrow	しない こと に する (to decide not to do)
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べない こと に する (to decide not to eat)
き 聞く (to ask)	\rightarrow	聞かない こと に する (to decide not to ask)
ある 歩く (to walk)	\rightarrow	歩かない こと に する (to decide not to walk)

```
の
飲む (to drink) \rightarrow 飲まない こと に する (to decide not to drink)
はな
話 す (to speak) \rightarrow 話さない こと に する (to decide not to speak)
```

Try a few yourself:

Dictionary form	Dictionary form +ことにする	ない-form+ことにする
く 1. 来る (to come)		
かえ 2.帰 る (to go hor	me)	
い 3. 行く (to go)		
で 4. 出る (to leave)		,
か 5. 書く (to write)		
や 6. 辞める (to quit)		
と 7. 飛ぶ (to fly)		
か 8. 買う (to buy)		
し 9. 死ぬ (to die)		
お 10. 押す (to push)		

Now, let's check out a few example sentences to get a feel for it. The verbs will be highlighted in purple:



Kare no koto ga suki jyanai node kare wo paatii ni <u>sasowanai koto ni shita</u>. I don't like him, so I <u>decided to not invite</u> him to the party.

Now let's try some practice problems.

Practice problems:

Unscramble the following words to make complete sentences:

や わたし
Ex. 辞める / しごと / 私 /を / は / に / しました / こと
yameru / shigoto / watashi / wo / ha / ni / shimashita
I decided to quit my job.

私 は しごと を 辞める こと に しました

わたし 1. テレビ / 私 / を / は / こと / に / 見る / しました。 torchi / wetechi / we / ho / kete / ni / miru / shimoshita

terebi / watashi / wo / ha / koto / ni / miru / shimashita I decided to watch T.V.

かれ

2. 彼 / この / CD / は / 買わない / しました / に / こと / をkare / kono / CD / ha / kawanai / shimashita / ni / koto / wo He decided not to buy this CD.

い わたし
3. アメリカ / 行く / に / こと / しました / 私 / は / に amerika / iku / ni / koto / shimashita / watashi / ha / ni I decided to go to America.

わたし かえ
4. 私 / は / した / に / こと / 帰る / に watashi / ha / shita / ni / koto / kaeru / ni I decided to go home.

ふ あめ い

5. 降っている / が / 雨 / 行かない / こと / に / から / した futteiru / ga / ame / ikanai / koto / ni / kara / shita Because it's raining, I decided not to go.

やす か

6. これ / 安かった / こと / 買う / した / に / は / ので kore / yasukatta / koto / kau / shita / ni / ha / node This was cheap, so I decided to buy it.

こ かのじょ

7. 来ない / に / こと / 彼女 / が / しました konai / ni / koto / kanojo / ga / shimashita She decided not to come.

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- We can append 「こと に する」 to either the dictionary or ない-form of our verb to express a decision to do or not do something
- The 「する」in 「こと に する」can be conjugated normally as a Type III verb

Chapter 55: Wh-questions +「でも」

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at how to combine our 'wh-question' words with $\lceil \mathcal{C} \mid \downarrow . \rfloor$ Just by doing this, we can easily change words like 'when' into 'whenever,' or 'what' into 'whatever.'

Let's take a look at the chart below:

Wh-words		ぎもんし 十 でも			
だれ 誰 (who)	\rightarrow	だれ 誰 でも (whoever/anybody)			
なん 何 (what)	\rightarrow	なん 何 でも (whatever/anything)			
どこ (where)	\rightarrow	どこでも (wherever/anywhere)			
いつ (when)	\rightarrow	いつでも (whenever/anytime)			
どう (how)	\rightarrow	どうでも			

You'll notice that 'Why' was left off of the list. The reason is that 「なんででも」 and 「なぜでも」 do not exist in Japanese. Similar to how there is no 'whyever' or 'anywhy' in English (as far as I know...).

And while the word $\lceil \mathcal{E} \supset \mathcal{C} \not\in \rfloor$ exists in Japanese, its meaning is quite different from 'however' and 'anyway/anyhow' as you know it in English, and is difficult to accurately translate. I'll explain in more detail at the end of the section how to use $\lceil \mathcal{E} \supset \mathcal{C} \not\in . \rfloor$ For now, though, let's just focus on 'who,' 'what,' 'where,' and 'when.'

Fortunately, this grammar structures works very similarly to the English structure, so understanding and using it should be pretty straightforward.

Let's take a look at some example sentences. Our Wh-words and $\lceil \mathfrak{C} \nmid \rfloor$ will be highlighted in <u>violet</u>.



2. パーティー に <u>誰</u> <u>でも</u> 来られます ょ。

Paatii ni daredemo koraremasu yo.

Anyone can come to the party.

しつもんき

3. 質問 が あれば <u>いつでも</u> オフィス に 来てください。 Shitsumon ga areba <u>itsudemo</u> ofisu ni kitekudasai. If you have a question, please come to the office <u>anytime</u>.

はこ

4. A: 「この 箱 をどこ に おいたら いい です か?」
[Kono hako wo doko ni oitara ii desu ka?]

"Where should I put this box?"

B: 「<u>どこでも</u> いい です よ。」

[Dokodemo ii desu yo.]

"Anywhere is fine."

なつやすい

5. A: 「 夏 休 み に どこ に 行きたい です か? 」

[Natsu yasumi ni doko ni ikitai desu ka?]

"Where do you want to go for summer vacation?"

B: 「どこでも いい です。」

[Dokodemo ii desu.]

"Anywhere is fine."

はは りょうり じょうず <u>なん</u> つく

6. 母 は 料理 が 上手 だから 何 でも 作 れます。

Haha ha ryouri ga jouzu dakara nandemo tsukuremasu.

My mom is good at cooking, so she can make anything.

し き まえ しゅくだい ていしゅつ

7. 締め切り 前 なら、いつでも 宿題 を 提出 していいですよ。

Shimekiri mae nara, itsudemo shyukudai wo teishutsu shite ii desu yo.

If it's before the deadline, you can turn in the homework anytime.

だれ でき もんだい

8. これ は <u>誰 でも</u> 出来る 問題 です。

Kore ha daredemo dekiru mondai desu.

This is a problem anyone can do.

Some guy's pro tip #76:

I really like the Kanji for 「和食.」「和」means 'peace,' or 'harmony.' And 「食」means 'eat' or 'food.' Put them together and we get 'harmonious food,' which I think does a great job of expressing how Japanese cuisine brings together many different flavors into one dish.

And now, just like I promised earlier, we'll take a closer look at 「どうでも.」

You will often see 「どうでも」 used in conjunction with 「いい」 (good), so that's what we're going to focus on.

When paired together with $\lceil \iota \iota \iota \iota, \rfloor$ we can express a feeling of indifference, or that the subject at hand doesn't matter.

Let's look at some example sentences so you can see for yourself how it works.

1. それはどうでもいいことだよ。

Sore ha doudemo ii koto da yo.

That doesn't matter.

ごうかく

2. あなた が 合格 する かどうか は どうでも いい。

Anata ga goukaku suru ka dou ka ha doudemo ii.

It doesn't matter if you pass or not.

わたし

3. 私 には <u>どうでも いい</u> こと です。

Watashi niha doudemo ii koto desu.

I doesn't matter to me.

たか あたら くるま

4. 高 い かどうか は <u>どうでも いい</u>。 新 しい 車 が ほしい。

Takai kadouka ha doudemo ii. Atarashii kuruma ga hoshii.

I don't care if it's expensive or not. I want a new car.

Now let's try some practice problems and put our newly acquired knowledge to use.

Practice problems:

1	,
10	6
' ~	<i>/</i> I

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words among 「 何 でも、」「いつでも、」「どこでだれ

Ex. I can go whenever/anytime.

1. I love books. I read anything.

2. A: Where shall we eat?

B: Anywhere/Wherever is fine.

```
_____いいですよ。
______ii desu yo.
```

3. He can do anything.

かれ	でき
彼 は	出来ます よ。
Kare ha	dekimasu yo.

4. A: "What should I do?"

B: "Anything is okay."

Γ	いい です	よ。	
	ii desu yo.]		

	だれ たの 「誰 に 頼 めば いい です か?」 [Dare ni tanomeba ii desu ka?]
	B: "Anyone is fine."
	[いいですよ。] [desu yo.]
6.	I'm going to be home all day, so please come anytime.
	わたし いちにちじゅう いえ き 私 は 一日中 家 に いる から来て ください Watashi ha ichinichijuu ie ni iru karakite kudasai.
7.	"Don't worry about me. Hurry, get out of here!"
	わたし はや に 「 私 はいい。早く逃げてください!」 [Watashi haii. Hayaku nigete kudasai!]
8.	There's no hurry, so turn it in anytime.
	いそ だ 急 いでいない から 出して ください。 Isoideinai karadashite kudasai.
9.	My dog can sleep anywhere.
	ねむ うち の ワンちゃん は 眠 れます。 Uchi no wanchan hanemuremasu.
10	. Anyone can learn to speak Japanese.
	にほんご はな 日本語 を 話 せるよう に なります。 nihongo wo hanaseruyou ni narimasu.

5. A: "Who should I ask?"

Chapter Summary:

Let's see what we learned in this chapter:

- We can combine our Wh-questions with $\lceil \mathfrak{T} \not \models \rfloor$ to have the words take on new meanings
- We cannot append 「でも」to「なんで」or「なぜ」(the words for 'why')
- Often times we will see 「どうでも」in conjunction with「いい」 to express indifference

Chapter 56: 'Must not ~' with 「~て は いけない」

We use this structure when we want to express that something is prohibited, forbidden, or just plain shouldn't be done (perhaps because it's impolite).

To use this structure, we simply append 「は いけない」 to the て-form of our verb.

Anata ha hitori de itte ha ikenai desu.

You mustn't go by yourself.

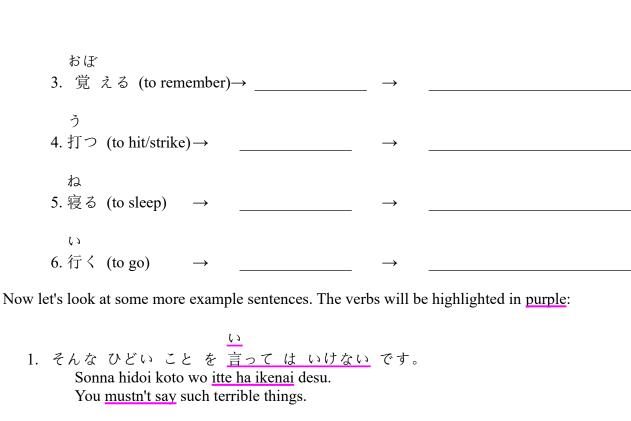
「いけない」 can be translated as "bad" or "not good." So, we can think of this structure as basically saying, "To [verb] would be no good." Of course, depending on the context of the conversation, it can have a much stronger meaning or feeling than just expressing that something is 'bad.'

Before looking at some more example sentences, let's try conjugating a few verbs ourselves to the τt $\psi t \tau$ o-form.

Dictionary form		て-form		<u>~はいし</u>	<u> </u>	
の 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow	飲んで	\rightarrow	飲んでし	は いけない	(mustn't drink)
はし 走る (to run)	\rightarrow	走って	\rightarrow	走ってん	よ いけない	(mustn't run)
かんが 考 える (to thin	k)→	考えて	\rightarrow	考えてし	は いけない	(mustn't think)
も 持つ (to hold)	\rightarrow	持って	\rightarrow	持ってし	は いけない	(mustn't hold)
な 投げる (to throw)	\rightarrow	投げて	\rightarrow	投げてし	よ いけない	(mustn't throw)

Try a few on your own:

Dictionary form	<u>て-fo</u>	<u>rm</u>		<u>~は いけない</u>
く 1. 来る (to come)	→		\rightarrow	
2. する (to do)	→		\rightarrow	



なまみず くに

2. その 国 の 生水 を 飲んで は いけません。*** Sono kuni no namamizu wo nonde ha ikemasen. Do not drink the water in that country.

なか いえ くつ 3. 家 の 中 で 靴 をはいてはいけません。 Ie no naka de kutsu wo haite ha ikemasen.

We mustn't wear shoes inside the house.

いもうと なぐ 妹 を 殴ってはいけないよ。 4. あなた の

Anata no imouto wo nagutte ha ikenai yo. It's not okay to hit your little sister.

あぶ はし 5. ここで 走ってはいけないです。危ないです。

> Koko de hashitte ha ikenai desu. Abunai desu. No running here. It's dangerous.

6.

がっこう では ガールフレンド と <u>キス して は ダメ</u> です。<u>*⁷⁸</u> 学校

Gakkou de ha gaarufurendo to kisu shite ha dame desu.

Kissing your girlfriend at school is prohibited.

Some guy's pro tip #77:

 $\lceil \sim \tau \mid t \mid \text{ of } t \neq \lambda \rfloor$ is the more polite version of $\lceil \sim \tau \mid t \mid \text{ of } t \neq \lambda \rfloor$.

Some guy's pro tip #78:

Like $\lceil \wp \ | \ f \otimes \wp |$ also translates to 'no good' or 'bad,' and in casual situations $\lceil g \times \rfloor$ can be used in place of $\lceil \wp \ | \ | \ | \ | \ |$

くに なまみず の
$$Ex.$$
 その 国 の 生水 を 飲んで は ダメ。

Sono kuni no namamizu wo nonde ha dame.

Do not drink the water in that country.

Well, that wraps up this short chapter. If you're looking for practice problems, you can find them at the end of the following chapter.

Chapter Summary:

Let's see what we learned in this chapter:

- The more formal/polite version of 「いけない」is 「いけません」
- 「ダメ」is the informal/casual version of 「いけない」

Chapter 57: 'Must/Have to ~' with「~なくて はいけない」and「~なければ ならない」

To form this construction, we:

- 1. Conjugate our verb to its ない-form
- 2. Drop 「ない」

Let's look at some quick examples:

しゅくだい

Ex. 宿題 を しなくて は いけない です。 Shukudai wo shinakuteha ikenai desu.

I have to do my homework.

わたし ね まえ は み

Ex. 私 は 寝る 前 に 歯 を 磨かなければ なりません。

Watashi ha neru mae ni ha wo migakanakereba narimasen. Before going to bed, I have to brush my teeth.

before going to bed, I have to brush my teem.

Dictionary form	<u>ない-form</u>	<u>~なくて は いけない</u>
く 来る (to come)	こ 来 ない	こ 来なくて は いけない (have to come)
する (to do)	l ⊈N	しなくて は いけない (have to do)
あげる (to give)	あげ ない	あげなくて は いけない (have to give)
うた 歌 う (to sing)	歌わ ない	歌わなくて は いけない (have to sing)
お 押す (to push)	押さ ない	押さなくて は いけない (have to push)

Next, let's take a look at some example conjugations with $\lceil \sim x t t t t t \rfloor$

Dictionary form	ない-form	<u>~なければ ならない</u>
く 来る (to come)	こ 来 ない	こ 来なければ ならない (have to come)
する (to do)	l ない	しなければ ならない (have to do)
あげる (to give)	あげ ない	あげなければ ならない (have to give)
うた 歌 う (to sing)	歌わ ない	歌わなければ ならない (have to sing)
お 押す (to push)	押さ ない	押さなければ ならない (have to push)

Now try some on your own.

Dictionary form	ない-form	<u>~なくて は いけない</u>	<u>∼なければ ならない</u>
の 1. 飲む (to drink)			
はし 2. 走る (to run)		-	
な 3. 投げる (to throw))		
う 4. 打つ (to hit)			
ね 5. 寝る (to sleep)			
い 6. 行く (to go)			

Excellent. Now that we've got the meaning and construction of this grammar point down, let's take a look at some more example sentences, shall we? The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u>:

しゅくだい

1. 宿題 をしなくてはいけない。

Shukudai wo shinakute ha ikenai.

I must do my homework.

わたし かね い はたら

2. 私 はお金 が要るから 働 かなければ なりません。

Watashi ha okane ga iru kara hatarakanakereba narimasen.

I need money, so I have no choice but to work.

じかん はや い

3. 時間 が ない から 早 く 行かなくて は いけない。

Jikan ga nai kara hayaku ikanakute ha ikenai.

There's no time, so it's imperative that we go soon.

い まえ <u>か</u>

4. みのり の パーティー に 行く 前 に、 プレゼント を 買わなくて は いけない。

Minori no paatii ni iku mae ni, purezento wo kawanakute ha ikenai.

Before going to Minori's party, I have to buy a present.

かいがい い

5. 海外 に 行きたかったら パスポート を 取らなければ ならない よ。

Kaigai ni ikitakattara pasupooto wo toranakereba naranai yo.

If you want to go abroad, you need to get a passport.

にほん す にほんご <u>べんきょう</u>

6. 日本 に 住んでいる ので、 日本語 を <u>勉強</u> <u>しなければ なりません</u>。 $\underline{\star}^{29}$

Nihon ni sundeiru node, nihongo wo benkyou shinakereba narimasen.

I'm living in Japan, so I need study Japanse.

Some guy's pro tip #79:

「なりません」is the more formal/polite version of 「ならない.」

Now let's check some practice problems.

Practice problems:

The following problems will test your knowledge of this chapter and the previous chapter.

Using the English sentence as a guide, fill in the blanks with the either the てはいけない-form, or なくて は いけない / なければ ならない-form of the given verbs.

1. Smoking is prohibited here.	
	す
ここ で タバコ を	。(吸う)
Koko de tabako wo	(suu)

2. I don't have a car, so I have to walk.

3. I have a test tomorrow, so I have to study.

4. You mustn't do that.

$$\mathcal{E}_{\mathrm{N}}$$
 \mathcal{E}_{N} \mathcal{E}_{N}

5. Today is my friend's birthday, so I have to give him a present.

6. I must go to work.

7. I didn't have time to make lunch, so I had to buy one at the convenience	ce store.
べんとう つく じかん お 弁当 を 作 る 時間 が なかった から コンビニ	で
かく思う	
。(買う) Obentou wo tsukuru jikan ga nakatta kara conbini de	(kau)
8. I have to pay my phone bill every month.	
or a time to the property of the terms of th	
まいつき でんわだい	しはら
毎月 、 電話代 を	。(支払 う)
Maitsuki, denwadai wo	(shiharau)
9. We mustn't use loud voices in the library.	
としょかん おおごえ	はな
図書館 では 大声 で	です。(話す)
Toshokan deha oogoe de	desu. (hanasu)
10. I have to wear a suit to the interview.	
めんせつ	ا
面接 で スーツ を	。(着る)
面接 で スーツ を Mensetsu de suutsu wo	(kiru)
11. You mustn't lose your passport.	
	な
パスポート を	です。(失くす)
Pasupooto wodesu. (na	kusu)
12. You mustn't think about things from past.	
むかし こと	かんが
昔 の 事 に ついて。(考 える)
Mukashi no koto ni tsuite (kangaeru)	
napter Summary:	

<u>Ch</u>

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- needs to or has to be done
- 「 \sim なくて は いけない」and「 \sim なけれ ばならない」mean the same thing
- 「なりません」is the formal/polite version of「ならない」

Chapter 58: The passive form with 「れる」 and 「られる」

We're going to wrap up our Japanese adventure with the passive form, also known as the 'ukemikei' (受身形) in Japanese.

I saved this lesson for last because it is quite an advanced grammar structure, and is going to require us to think outside of the temporal sentence structure of simple past, present and future that we've been looking at so far. Adding the ability to use the passive voice to our Japanese speaking arsenal will prove to be an invaluable tool as you further your study.

Right now you might be asking "What is this 'passive voice' that you're going on about?"

Instead of giving you flashbacks of your middle school English class, I think it would be best to look at some example sentences that clearly illustrate what it means to use the passive voice.

For now, just read the sentences to get an idea of what the structure looks like. You aren't expected to understand how it works quite yet. The details will be explained later.

むし わたし さ Non-passive voice: 虫 が 私 を 刺しました。 Mushi ga watashi wo sashimashita.

Mushi ga watashi wo sashimashita. A bug stung me.

わたし むし さ

Passive voice: 私 は 虫 に 刺されました。

Watashi ha mushi ni sasaremashita. I was stung by a bug.

いぬ た Non-Passive voice: その 犬 が ケーキ を 食べました。

Sono inu ga keeki wo tabemashita.

That dog ate the cake.

いぬ た Passive voice: ケーキ は その 犬 に 食べられました。

Keeki ha sono inu ni taberaremashita. The cake was eaten by that dog.

かのじょ わたし さそ

Non-passive: 彼女 が 私 を パーティーに 誘 いました。

Kanojo ga watashi wo paatii ni sasoimashita.

She invited me to the party.

Watashi ha kanojo ni paatii ni sasowaremashita.

I was invited to the party by her.

Basically, we use the passive voice when the subject of the sentence is the recipient of the action.

Does it look a little scary? It's okay. We're going to break it down and take it one step at a time. First, let's just look at how to properly conjugate our verbs to the passive voice.

We'll start with our Type I verbs.

Type I Verbs:

To conjugate our Type I verbs to their passive voice form, there are only two steps:

- 1. Change the final character to its \$\dar{b}\$-equivalent
- 2. Add 「れる」

Let's take a look at some examples together.

ょ

If we take the verb for 'to read,'「読む,」we can see that its final character is 「む.」Consulting our Hiragana chart, we can see that the b-equivalent of 「む」is 「ま.」

Hiragana										
	あ	а	<i>c y</i>	i	う	u	え	е	お	0
k	か	ka	き	ki	<	ku	け	ke	2	ko
S	<u>ځ</u>	sa	L	shi	す	su	せ	se	そ	so
t	た	ta	ち	chi	つ	tsu	て	te	٤	to
n	な	na	に	ni	ぬ	nu	ね	ne	の	no
h	は	ha	V	hi	3,	fu	^	he	ほ	ho
m	ま	ma	み	mi	む	mu	め	me	ŧ	mo
y	や	ya			ゆ	yu			よ	yo
r	5	ra	り	ri	る	ru	れ	re	ろ	ro
W	わ	wa			う	u			を	wo
	h	n								

ょ

After switching out 「む」 for 「 \mathfrak{z} ,」 all that's left to do is append 「 \mathfrak{n} る,」 and we get 「読まれる」 (to be read).

Let's take a look at one more. This time with the verb for to ask/hear; $\lceil \mathbb{H} \cdot \mathbb{I} \rceil$ Again, our first step is to change the final character (\cdot) to its \circ -equivalent. Let's consult our chart one more time:

Hiragana										
	あ	а	()	i	う	u	え	е	お	0
k	か	ka	き	ki	<	ku	け	ke	2	ko
S	<u>ځ</u>	sa	し	shi	す	su	せ	se	そ	so
t	た	ta	ち	chi	つ	tsu	7	te	٤	to
n	な	na	に	ni	ぬ	nu	ね	ne	の	no
h	は	ha	V	hi	3,	fu	^	he	ほ	ho
m	ま	ma	み	mi	む	mu	め	me	ŧ	mo
у	や	ya			ゆ	yu			よ	yo
r	5	ra	り	ri	る	ru	れ	re	ろ	ro
W	わ	wa			う	u			を	wo
	h	n								

We can see that the \mathscr{D} -equivalent of $\lceil \zeta \rfloor$ is $\lceil \mathscr{D} \rangle$.

き

After switching out $\lceil \zeta \rfloor$ for $\lceil n, \rfloor$ we append $\lceil n, \zeta, \rfloor$ and we end up with $\lceil 聞かれる \rfloor$ (to be asked/to be heard).

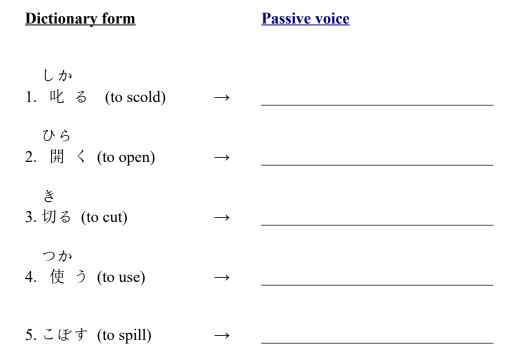
Not so bad, right?

Here are some more examples. See if you can follow along:

Dictionary form	Passive voice			
の 飲む (to drink)	\rightarrow	飲まれる (to be drunk)		
つく 作 る (to make)	\rightarrow	作られる (to be made)		
お 押す (to push)	\rightarrow	押される (to be pushed)		

か
買う (to buy)
$$\rightarrow$$
 買われる (to be bought)
も
持つ (to hold) \rightarrow 持たれる (to be held)

Try a few yourself.



Next, let's take a look at our Type II Verbs:

Dictionary form		Passive voice
た 食べる (to eat)	\rightarrow	食べられる (to be eaten)
み 見る (to watch)	\rightarrow	見られる (to be watched)
ほめる (to praise)	\rightarrow	ほめられる (to be praised)
おぼ 覚 える (to remember)	\rightarrow	覚えられる (to be remembered)

かんが 考 える (to think)
$$\rightarrow$$
 考えられる (to be thought) な 投げる (to throw) \rightarrow 投げられる (to be thrown)

Try to conjugate a few on your own:

Dictionary form

Passive voice

1.
$$b$$
 if b (to give) \rightarrow

Now all that's left are our friends the Type III Verbs.

Dictionary form

Passive voice

する (to do)
$$\rightarrow$$
 される (to be done) $<$ こ

く こ
$$*$$
 来る (to come) \rightarrow 来られる $*$ 来

Some guy's pro tip #80:

7

I'm not sure what a good English translation for 「来られる」 would be (certainly not 'to be come'), ζ and you might be wondering how we can use it. One way is when 「来る」 is paired with another verb; ξ

like「持って来る,」the verb for 'to bring.'

Using the passive voice, we can say something 'was brought.'

かのじょ
$$\frac{\mathbf{t}}{\mathbf{t}}$$
 \mathbf{c} \mathbf{Ex} . これ は 彼女 に 持って来られた。

Kore ha kanojo ni mottekorareta.

This was brought by her.

Now that you've gotten the easy party down, it's time to get into the nitty-gritty of it and look at the structure of a passive voice sentence in more detail.

Let's take a look at some of the example sentences we saw at the beginning of this chapter.

We can see that the doer of the action (指す) was the bug, so 「虫」 is marked with 「に.」 The recipient of the action is 「私,」 so it is marked with 「は.」

And in the sentence

The cake was eaten by the dog.

We can see that the action (食べる) was done by the dog (犬), so 「 犬 」 is marked with 「に.」 The receiver of the action (the thing that was eaten), 「ケーキ,」 is then marked with 「は.」

If we have in the sentence some belonging or body part of the recipient of the action, we mark it with $\lceil \not \epsilon . \rfloor$

In the non-passive voice, this sentence would look like this:

Here are some more examples showing the use of $\lceil \not \varepsilon \rfloor$ in the passive voice. The verbs will be highlighted in <u>purple</u> :	
わたし おとうと <u>こわ</u> 1. 私 は 弟 に <u>パソコン を 壊 されました</u> 。 Watashi ha otouto ni <u>pasokon wo kowasaremashita</u> . <u>My computer was broken</u> by my brother.	
わたし かれ <u>あたま なぐ</u> 2. 私 は 彼 に <u>頭 を 殴 られました</u> 。 Watashi ha kare ni <u>atama wo naguraremashita</u> . I was hit in the head by him.	
わたし でんしゃ なか だれ <u>あし</u> <u>ふ</u> 3. 私 は 電車 の 中 で 誰 か に 足 を 踏まれた。 Watashi ha densha no naka de dareka ni <u>ashi wo fumareta</u> . <u>My foot was stepped</u> on by someone on the train.	
かのじょ だれ <u>じてんしゃ</u> <u>ぬ</u> 4. 彼女 は 誰 か に <u>自転車 を 盗まれた</u> 。 Kanojo ha dareka ni jitensha wo nusumareta. Her bike was stolen by someone.	
Now let's try some practice problems.	
Practice problems:	
Fill in the blanks with the correct particle; $\lceil \iota t, \rfloor \lceil \iota t \rceil$ or $\lceil \varepsilon \cdot \rfloor$ Be careful, sentences will appear both the passive and non passive voice!	r in
Ex. Mom scolded me.	
しか お母さん が 私 <u>を 叱りました</u> 。(叱 る) Okaasan ga watashi wo shikarimashita. (shikaru)	
Ex. I was scolded by Mom.	
私 <u>は</u> お母さん <u>に</u> <u>叱られました</u> 。 (叱 る) Watashi ha okaasan ni shikararemashita. (shikaru)	
1. That CD was brought by Misa.	
その C D みささん 。 (持って来る) Sono CD Misa-san . (mottekuru)	

2.	My wallet was st	tolen by a thief.		
	わたし	さい	<i>\$</i> .	ぬす
		どろぼう 財布	ī	
	Watashi	dorobousaifu		(nusumu)
3.	I ate the apple.			
	わたし		た	
		n 4 = "		(* Z)
	Watashi	ringo	。(食 [∠] (taberu)	
4	The apple was ea			
	The apple was ea	iten by me.		
		わたし	た	
	りんご	私	。(食⁄	べる)
	Ringo	watashi	(taberu)	
5.	I was told by hin	1.		
	わたし	かわ	()	
			。(言う))
		kare		
6.	She made a cake			
				- /
	かのじょ	<i>L</i> . <i>L</i>) < /r/>// 2 \
	IQ 从 Kanojo	7—+ 	(tsukuru)	作 る)
	Kanojo	KCCKI	(tsukuru)	
7.	I wrote this repor	rt.		
	わたし			か
	私	この レポート		。(書く)
	Watashi	kono repooto	. (k	aku)
8.	This report was	written by me.		
		わたし		か
	このしまっ			
	Kono repoote	watashi	. (k	aku)
9.	My water was dr			•
	,			
		かれ みず		O (
	私 Watashi	彼 お 水 _ 		。(飲む)
	watasni	kare omizu		(nomu)

Chapter Summary:

Let's recap what we learned in this chapter:

- The passive voice is used to emphasize the *doer* of the action
- When using the passive voice, the doer of the action is marked with $\lceil \sqrt{\zeta} \rfloor$
- When talking about one's belonging or body part, we mark it with 「を」
- To conjugate our Type I verbs, we change the trailing character to its b-equivalent, and add [n 3]
- To conjugate our Type II verbs, we replace the trailing $\lceil \delta \rfloor$ character with $\lceil \delta \hbar \delta \rfloor$
- The passive voice form of「する」and「来る」are「される」and「来られる」

Closing and acknowledgments

Well, that's the end of the book. If you made it here all the way from Chapter 1, let me be the first to congratulate you.

This was my first attempt at writing any kind of instruction material, and I honestly didn't expect it to get this lengthy, or take nearly as long as it did (11 months!). I definitely would not have been able to do it by myself, and a huge debt of gratitude goes to my Japanese teacher Sayaka, without whom this book would have never reached an end, and even it it did, would have been so full of typos/grammar mistakes/mis-use of Kanji, etc... that I would have been too embarrassed to put my name on it and let it out into the world. So thank you very much Sayka-sensei. And thank you to all of my other friends; Akemi, Misa, Ryouko, and everyone else who helped me along the way, and has made my stay here in Japan so amazing.

I would also like to give, again, a special thanks to Minori for lending me her beautiful voice in reading all of the example sentences. Thank you, Minori!

If the response from this book is good enough, I could definitely be persuaded to write another one. Now that I have a little more experience under my belt, it shouldn't take nearly as long as this one did (hopefully). So if you have any questions, comments or feedback, please feel free to e-mail me at LearnJapaneseFromSomeGuy@gmail.com

If you're wondering 'Where should I go from here?' I definitely recommend finding a little more advanced material and using that to study. And of course, I always recommend finding a teacher to help facilitate the learning process. If you're interested in taking lessons from Sayaka-sensei (like I've been doing for nearly four years, three times a week), she offers lessons through Skype. I'm sure she would be more than happy to help you. For information regarding that, you can look her up on Facebook at Cafe-Lejet-Room.

So again, dear reader, thank you very much for coming along with me on this Japanese adventure. I hope you enjoyed reading this book as much as I enjoyed writing it. I hope you were able to learn a lot from it. I know it was definitely a great learning experience for me

Jeremy Rasmussen

Check out my homepage at www.LearnJapaneseFromSomeGuy.com

Chapter 2:

Practice problems:

- 1. は、です
- 2. は、で は ありません、が、です
- 3. は、です
- 4. は、ではありません、は、です
- 5. は、です

Chapter 3:

Practice problems:

Because the answers are based on your opinions, either answer is correct.

- 1. 私 は 夏 が 好き です/好き では ありません。
- 2. 私 は 海 が 好き です/好き では ありません。
- 3. 私 は ブロッコリー が 好き です/好き では ありません。
- 4. 私 は 花 が 好き です/好き では ありません。
- 5. 私 は ロマンスノベル が 好き です/好き では ありません。
- 6. 私 は 日本語 が 好き です/好き では ありません。

Chapter 4:

Practice problems:

- 1. あなた は サム ですか
- 2. あなた は 本 が 好き です か
- 3. これは つめたいですか
- 4. 彼 は 優しい です か
- 5. これはりんごですか

Chapter 6:

Practice problems:

- 1. 私の
- 2. あなた の
- 3. の
- 4. 私たち の
- 5. 彼女 の
- 6. O
- 7. 彼の

Chapter 7:

Practice problems:

- 1. 彼 は 日本 に/へ 来ます
- 2. 私たち は ストア に/へ 行きます
- 3. 彼ら は 私 の 家 に/へ 来ます
- 4. 彼女 は 私 の 家 に/へ 来ます
- 5. 彼ら は 学校 に/へ 行きます
- 6. あなた は パーティー に/へ 来ます か
- 7. 私 は 彼女 の 家 に/へ 行きます

Chapter 8:

Practice problems:

- 1. います
- 2. あります

- 3. いません
- 4. あります
- 5. います
- 6. ありません
- 7. います
- 8. ありません
- 9. いません
- 10. あります
- 11. います

Chapter 10:

Practice problems:

- 1. 食べます
- 2. 飲みます
- 3. 死にます
- 4. します
- 5. 考えます
- 6. 読みます
- 7. 走ります
- 8. 来ます
- 9. 話します
- 10. 出ます

Chapter 11:

Practice problems:

- 1. 食べません
- 2. 飲みません
- 3. 死にません
- 4. しません
- 5. 読みません
- 6. 走りません
- 7. 話しません
- 8. 来ません
- 9. 出ません

Chapter 12:

Type I Verbs - ない-form:

- 1. 書かない
- 2. 話さない
- 3. 死なない
- 4. 走らない
- 5. 買わない
- 6. 畳まない

Type II Verbs - ない-form:

- 1. あげない
- 2. 出来ない
- 3. 答えない

- 4. 見せない
- 5. 見つけない
- 6. 寝ない
- 7. 教えない
- 8. 閉めない
- 9. 辞めない

Chapter 13:

- 1. きれい
- 2. 変な
- 3. つまらない
- 4. 便利
- 5. きれい な
- 6. 辛い
- 7. 変
- 8. 高い
- 9. 便利 な
- 10.静か な
- 11. 静か
- 12. 優しい

Chapter 14:

Practice problems:

- 1. 私 は テレビ を 見ます
- 2. 彼女 は コーヒー を 飲みます
- 3. 私 は レポート を 書きます
- 4. 私 は 車 を うんてん する
- 5. 彼ら は おんがく を 聞きます
- 6. 私 は 日本語 を 話します

Chapter 15:

<u>~ことができる</u>

- 1. 歩くことができる
- 2. 走る こと が できる
- 3. 飲む こと が できる
- 4. 行く こと が できる
- 5. 食べる こと が できる
- 6. することができる

- 1. は、を、が
- 2. は、に、が
- 3. は、を、が
- 4. は、に、が
- 5. は、を、が
- 6. は、に、が

- 7. は、が
- 8. は、を、が

Chapter 16:

Type I verbs – Potential form:

- 1. 消せる
- 2. 書ける
- 3. 死ねる
- 4. 噛める
- 5. 飛べる
- 6. 作れる
- 7. 買える
- 8. 持てる

Type II verbs – Potential form:

	<u>ます-form</u>	Potential form
1.	な 投げます	投げられる
2.	おぼ 覚 えます	覚えられる
3.	か 変えます	変えられる
4.	かぞ 数 えます	数えられる

Practice problems:

1. 書ける / 書けます

- 2. 聞けない / 聞けません
- 3. 行けない / 行けません
- 4. 来られない / 来られません
- 5. 覚えられない / 覚えられません
- 6. 来られる / 来られます
- 7. 飲めない / 飲めません
- 8. 食べられない / 話べられません
- 9. 話せる / 話せます
- 10. できる / できます

Chapter 17:

- 1. だから
- 2. から
- 3. だから
- 4. から
- 5. だから
- 6. だから
- 7. だから
- 8. だから
- 9. から
- 10. から
- 11. から
- 12. だから

Chapter 18:

Practice problems:

- 1. ので
- 2. ので
- 3. ので
- 4. なので
- 5. ので
- 6. ので
- 7. ので
- 8. なので
- 9. なので
- 10. なので

Chapter 19:

Practice problems:

<u>ます-form</u> Past tense

- 1. 食べます 食べました
- 2. 読みます 読みました
- 3. 死にます 死にました
- 4. 買います 買いました
- 5. 飲みます 飲みました
- 6. 話します 話しました
- 7. 行きます 行きました

- 8. 来ます 来ました
- 9. します しました
- 10. 書きます 書きました

Chapter 20:

<u>Informal past tense form – Type I verbs:</u>

- 1. 持った
- 2. 歩いた
- 3. 笑った
- 4. 踊った
- 5. 死んだ
- 6. 飛んだ
- 7. 稼いだ
- 8. 返した
- 9. 病んだ

Informal past tense form - Type II verbs:

- 1. あげた
- 2. 出来た
- 3. 増えた
- 4. 間違えた
- 5. 見せた
- 6. 見つけた
- 7. 寝た

- 8. 教えた
- 9. 閉めた
- 10. 辞めた

Chapter 21:

Type I verbs:

<u>ません-form</u> <u>Formal negative past tense</u>

- 1. 飲みません 飲みませんでした
- 2. 歩きません 歩きませんでした
- 3. いません いませんでした
- 4. 死にません 死にませんでした
- 5. 指しません 指しませんでした
- 6. 脱ぎません 脱ぎませんでした

Type II verbs:

ません-form Formal negative past tense

- 1. 答えません 答えませんでした
- 2. 間違えません 間違えませんでした
- 3. 見せません 見せませんでした
- 4. 見つけません 見つけませんでした
- 5. 寝ません 寝ませんでした
- 6. 教えません 教えませんでした
- 7. 閉めません 閉めませんでした

Chapter 22:

Type I verbs:

<u>ない-form</u> <u>Informal past negative tense</u>

1. 行かない 行かなかった

2. 書かない 書かなかった

3. 買わない 買わなかった

4. 死なない 死ななかった

5. 乗らない 乗らなかった

6. 話さない 話さなかった

7. 叫ばない 叫ばなかった

8. 泳がない 泳がなかった

Type II verbs:

<u>ない-form</u> <u>Informal past negative tense</u>

1. 食べない 食べなかった

2. 見ない 見なかった

3. 出ない 出なかった

4. 下げない 下げなかった

5. 増えない 増えなかった

- 1. 彼女 は あさごはん を 食べなかった
- 2. 彼 は すうがく を べんきょう しました
- 3. 彼女 は がっこう に 来ました
- 4. 私 は プレゼント を 買わなかった

- 5. あなた は パーティー に 行きました
- 6. 私 は ボール を 投げた
- 7. 私 は ボール を 投げません でした
- 8. 私 は あさごはん を 食べました
- 9. 私 は ジム に 行った

Chapter 23:

Practice problems:

- 1. 読める よう に なりました / 読める よう に なった
- 2. 話せる よう に なりました /話せる よう に なった
- 3. できる よう に なりました / できる よう に なった
- 4. 投げられる よう に なりました / 投げられる よう に なった
- 5. 泳げる よう に なりました /泳げる よう に なった
- 6. 書ける よう に なりました /書ける よう に なった
- 7. 行ける よう に なりました / 行ける よう になった

Chapter 25:

Casual p	oast t	ense	ح	٤	が	ある

- 1. 読んだ こと が ある
- 2. 入った 入った こと が ある
- 3. 踊った 踊った こと が ある
- 5. 使った 使った こと が ある
- 6. 飛んだ こと が ある
- 7. 投げた 投げた こと が ある

8. 話した 話した こと が ある

9. 泳いだ 泳いだこと が ある

<u>Informal past tense</u> <u>~こと が ありません</u>

1. 読んだ こと が ありません

2. 食べた 食べた こと が ありません

3. 入った 入った こと が ありません

4. 踊った 踊った こと が ありません

6. 使った 使った こと が ありません

7. 飛んだ こと が ありません

8. 投げた と が ありません

9. 話した 話した こと が ありません

10. 泳いだ 泳いだ こと が ありません

Practice problems:

1. 彼女 は この 曲 を 聞いた こと が が ありません

2. あなた は ドイツ に 行った こと が あります か

3. 私 は それ を した こと が ありません

4. 私 は その 本 を 読んだ こと が ありません

5. 彼女 は 私 の 家 に 来た こと が あります

Chapter 26:

ます-form ましょう-form

1. 話します 話しましょう

- 2. 見ます
- 見ましょう
- 3. します
- しましょう
- 4. 歩きます
- 歩きましょう
- 5. 使います
- 使いましょう
- 6. 叫びます
- 叫びましょう
- 7. 運びます
- 運びましょう
- 8. 着ます
- 着ましょう
- 9. 指します
- 指しましょう

<u>おう-form</u>

- 1. 話そう
- 2. 歩こう
- 3. 使おう
- 4. 叫ぼう
- 5. 運ぼう
- 6. 指そう

<u>ます-form</u>

Volitional form

- 1. 考えます 考えよう
- 2. 教えます
- 教えよう
- 3. 見ます
- 見よう
- 4. 答えます
- 答えよう
- 5. 逃げます
- 逃げよう

Practice problems:

- 1. 食べよう
- 2. 行きましょう
- 3. 買おう
- 4. 見ょう
- 5. 食べましょう
- 6. 飲もう
- 7. 買いましょう

Chapter 27:

Practice problems I:

- 1. 私 は 彼 に けいたいでんわ を あげました / あげた
- 2. 彼女 は 彼女 に お金 を あげます / あげる
- 3. 私たち は 彼 に プレゼント を あげました / あげた
- 4. 彼 は 彼ら に 車 を あげました / あげた
- 5. 彼ら は 彼 に クッキー を あげました / あげた

Practice problems II:

- 1. 彼女 は 彼 に/から けいたいでんわ を もらいました
- 2. 彼女 は 彼女 に/から お金 を もらいます
- 3. 彼 は 彼ら に/から プレゼント を もらいました
- 4. 彼ら は 彼 に/から 車 を もらいました
- 5. 彼は彼らに/からクッキーをもらいました

Practice problems III:

1. 彼女 は 私 に 携帯電話 を くれました

- 2. 彼女 は 私 に お金 を くれます
- 3. 彼 は お父さん に プレゼント を くれました
- 4. 彼ら は 私 の 妹に車 を くれました
- 5. 彼ら は私に クッキー を くれました

Practice problems IV:

- 1. は、に、を
- 2. は、に、を
- 3. は、に、を
- 4. は、に、を
- 5. は、に/から、を
- 6. は、に、を
- 7. は、に/から、を
- 8. は、に、を
- 9. は、を
- 10. は、に/から、を
- 11. は、に、を
- 12. は、に、を
- 13. は、に、を

Chapter 28:

<u>ない-form + ほうがいい</u>

- 1. 歩かない ほう が いい
- 2. しない ほう が いい
- 3. 来ない ほう が いい

<u>た-form + ほうがいい</u>

歩いた ほう が いい

した ほう が いい

来た ほう が いい

- 4. 読まない ほう が いい
- 5. 立たない ほう が いい
- 6. 謝らない ほう が いい 謝った ほう が いい
- 7. 走らない ほう が いい
- 8. 呼ばない ほう が いい

読んだ ほう が いい

立った ほう が いい

走った ほう が いい

呼んだ ほう が いい

Practice problems:

- 1. 見た ほう が いい
- 2. 行った ほう が いい
- 3. 読まない ほう が いい
- 4. 食べない ほう が いい
- 5. しない ほう が いい
- 6. 買った ほう が いい
- 7. 飲んだ ほう が いい

Chapter 29:

Type I verbs:

て-form

- 1. 噛んで
- 2. 立って
- 3. そって
- 4. 書いて
- 5. 奪って
- 6. 探して

- 7. 死んで
- 8. 飛んで
- 9. 脱いで

Type II verbs:

Dictionary form	<u>T-form</u>
掛けます	掛けて
見えます	見えて
出かけます	出かけて
落ちます	落ちて
投げます	投げて
ない-form	ないで-form
注がない	注がないで
話さない	話さないで
走らない	走らないで
投げない	投げないで
死なない	死なないで
しない	しないで
消さない	消さないで
付けない	付けないで
飲まない	飲まないで
. 来ない	来ないで
. 歩かない	歩かないで
	掛見 出落 投 な 活 走 投 死 し 消 付 飲 来け え か ち げ い が さ ら げ な な さ け ま な す ま す す す す す か い い い い い い い い い い い い い い

12. 考えない 考えないで

- 13. 食べない 食べないで
- 14. 飛ばない
- 飛ばないで

Chapter 30:

Practice problems:

- 1. 閉めて
- 2. 忘れないで
- 3. 暖めて
- 4. 話さないで
- 5. 洗って
- 6. 書いて
- 7. 読まないで

Chapter 31:

Practice problems:

- 1. 来て、しました
- 2. 捨てて、作って ください
- 3. つけて、作って、して ください
- 4. 行って、する/します
- 5. して、話せる

Chapter 32:

Type I Verbs:

<u>て-form</u> ている-form

1. 歩いて 歩いている

- 2. 泣いて 泣いている
- 3. 押して 押している
- 4. 引いて 引いている

Type II Verbs:

て-form ている-form

- 1. 覚えて 覚えている
- 2. 抑えて 抑えている
- 3. 見て 見ている

Type III Verbs:

て-form ている-form

- 1. して している
- 2. 来て 来ている

- 1. 彼 は バスケットボール を しています
- 2. 私 の 犬 は 寝ています
- 3. 私 は マンガ を 読んでいません
- 4. 彼らは コーヒー を 飲んでいます
- 5. 彼女 は 英語 を 勉強していません
- 6. 彼女 は 家 を 掃除しています
- 7. あなた は 映画 を 見ています

Chapter 33:

Type I Verbs:

<u>~ている</u> <u>~ていました</u>

- 1. 作っている 作っていました
- 2. 学んでいる 学んでいました
- 3. 習っている 習っていました
- 4. 飲んでいる 飲んでいました
- 5. 歩いている 歩いていました
- 6. 走っている 走っていました
- 7. 泣いている 泣いていました
- 8. 働いている 働いていました

Type II Verbs:

<u>~ている</u> <u>~ていました</u>

- 1. 覚えている 覚えていました
- 2. 考えている 考えていました
- 3. あげている あげていました
- 4. 投げている 投げていました

Type III Verbs:

<u>~ていました</u> <u>~ていました</u>

- 1. 来ている 来ていました
- 2. している していました

Practice problems:

- 1. 食べています
- 2. 読む
- 3. 作っています
- 4. 読んでいました
- 5. 話していました
- 6. 飲む
- 7. しています
- 8. 住んでいます

Chapter 34:

<u>∼てあげる:</u>

	<u>T-form</u>	<u>~てあげる</u>
1.	聞いて	聞いてあげる
2.	注いで	注いであげる
3.	飲んで	飲んであげる
4.	閉めて	閉めてあげる
5.	待って	待ってあげる
6.	持って	持ってあげる
7.	考えて	考えてあげる
8.	来で	来てあげる
	<u>T-form</u>	<u>~てあげません</u>
1.	聞いて	聞いてあげません
2.	注いで	注いであげません

3. 飲んで 飲んであげません

4. 閉めて 閉めてあげません

5. 待って 待ってあげません

6. 持って 持ってあげません

7. 考えて 考えてあげません

8. 来て 来てあげません

Practice Problems:

1. 買ってあげました

2. 教えてあげています

3. 教えてあげていません

4. してあげません

5. 作ってあげています

6. 書いてあげています

7. 書いてあげていません

8. 買ってあげました

9. 買ってあげませんでした

10. 作ってあげましょう

<u>~てもらう:</u>

	<u>て-form</u>	<u>~てもらう</u>
1.	聞いて	聞いてもらう
2.	注いで	注いでもらう
3.	飲んで	飲んでもらう
4.	閉めて	閉めてもらう

5. 持って 持ってもらう

6. 待って 待ってもらう

7. 考えて 考えてもらう

8. 来て 来てもらう

<u>~てもらう:</u>

Practice problems:

- 1. 教えてもらっています
- 2. 買ってもらいました
- 3. 作ってもらいました
- 4. 歌ってもらいました
- 5. 消してもらいました
- 6. してもらっています

<u>~てくれる:</u>

	<u>T-form</u>	<u>~てくれる</u>
1.	聞いて	聞いてくれる
2.	注いで	注いでくれる
3.	飲んで	飲んでくれる
4.	閉めて	閉めてくれる
5.	持って	持ってくれる
6.	待って	待ってくれる
7.	考えて	考えてくれる
8.	来て	来てくれる

<u>~てくれる:</u>

Practice problems:

- 1. 貸してくれました
- 2. 書いてくれました
- 3. してくれます
- 4. 買ってくれました
- 5. 読んでくれました

Chapter 35:

	<u>ます-stem</u>	<u>たい-form</u>	<u>たがる-form</u>
1.	踊ります	踊りたい	踊りたがる
2.	歌います	歌いたい	歌いたがる
3.	泣きます	泣きたい	泣きたがる
4.	見ます	見たい	見たがる
5.	買います	買いたい	買いたがる
6.	作ります	作りたい	作りたがる
7.	落とします	落としたい	落としたがる

- 1. 食べたくない
- 2. 買いたい
- 3. 見たがります
- 4. 泳ぎたかった
- 5. 来たがります
- 6. 踊りたがります

- 7. したい
- 8. したくない
- 9. したかった
- 10. したくなかった
- 11. 帰りたがらない

Chapter 36:

<u>ます-stem</u>	<u>方-form</u>
1. 書きます	書き方
2. 聞きます	聞き方
3. 泳ぎます	泳ぎ方
4. 踊ります	踊り方
5. 投げます	投げ方
6. あげます	あげ方
7. 読みます	読み方
8. 歩きます	歩き方
9. 立ちます	立ち方
10. 考えます	考え方
11. 飲みます	飲み方

Chapter 37:

- 1. X
- 2. X

- 3. だ
- 4. X
- 5. だ
- 6. X
- 7. だ
- 8. X
- 9. X
- 10. だ

Chapter 38:

Verbs:

Informal past tense	Conditional
1. 書いた	書いたら
2. 泣いた	泣いたら
3. 頑張った	頑張ったら
4. 考えた	考えたら
5. 思った	思ったら
6. 指した	指したら
7. 覚えた	覚えたら

41-adjectives:

Informal past tense	Conditional
1. 高かった	高かったら
2. 強かった	強かったら
3. 眠かった	眠かったら

4. 弱かった

弱かったら

な-adjectives:

<u>Informal past tense</u> <u>Conditional</u>

1. 不便だった 不便だったら

2. 大事だった 大事だったら

3. 大変だった 大変だったら

4. 変だった 変だったら

Nouns:

Informal past tense Conditional

1. ピンクだった ピンクだったら

2. 子どもだった 子どもだったら

3. すしだった すしだったら

4. マンガだった マンガだったら

Verbs:

ない-form Negative conditional

1. 書かない 書かなかったら

2. 泣かない 泣なかったら

3. 考えない 考えなかったら

4. 思わない 思わなかったら

5. 指さない 指さなかったら

6. 覚えない 覚えなかったら

43-adjectives:

ない-form Negative conditional

- 1. 高くない 高くなかったら
- 2. 強くない 強くなかったら
- 3. 眠くない 眠くなかったら
- 4. 汚くない 汚くなかったら

Nouns:

ない-form Negative conditional

- 1. ピンクではない ピンクでなかったら
- 2. 子どもではない 子どもでなかったら
- 3. すしではない すしでなかったら
- 4. マンガではない マンガでなかったら

な-adjectives:

<u>ない-form</u> Negative conditional

- 1. 不便ではない 不便でなかったら
- 2. 大事ではない 大事はなかったら
- 3. 大変ではない 大変でなかったら

- 1. なかったら
- 2. 女の子 だったら
- 3. 苦くなかったら
- 4. 降ったら
- 5. 降らなかったら

- 6. 静か でなかったら
- 7. 21さい でなかったら
- 8. 変 だったら

Chapter 39:

Type I Verbs:

- 1. 飲めば
- 2. 歩けば
- 3. 探せば
- 4. 壊せば
- 5. 降れば

Type II Verbs:

- 1. 投げれば
- 2. 覚えれば
- 3. 見えれば

13-adjectives:

- 1. 安ければ
- 2. 遅ければ
- 3. 寒ければ
- 4. 苦ければ
- 5. 甘ければ

な-adjectives:

- 1. 便利なら(ば)
- 2. 大変なら(ば)

3. 丈夫なら(ば)

Nouns:

- 1. 本なら(ば)
- 2. キャンディーなら(ば)
- 3. 魚なら(ば)

Verbs:

ない-form	Negative conditional
1. 飲まない	飲まなければ
2. 歩かない	歩かなければ
3. 探さない	探さなければ
4. 壊さない	壊さなければ
5. 降らない	降らなければ
6. 投げない	投げなければ
7. 覚えない	覚えなければ
8. 見えない	見えなければ

43-adjectives:

	<u>ない-form</u>	Negative conditional
1.	安くない	安くなければ
2.	遅くない	遅くなければ
3.	寒くない	寒くなければ
4.	苦くない	苦くなければ

な-adjectives:

ない-form

Negative conditional

1. 便利ではない

便利でなければ

2. 大変ではない

大変でなければ

3. 丈夫ではない

丈夫でなければ

Practice problems:

- 1. 学生なら(ば)
- 2. 上手でなければ
- 3. 安ければ
- 4. あれば
- 5. 来れば
- 6. すれば
- 7. 上手なら(ば)
- 8. 良ければ
- 9. 良くなければ
- 10. 子どもなら(ば)

Chapter 40:

- 1. するつもり です
- 2. するつもり だ と言っています
- 3. するつもり だ と言っていました
- 4. 買うつもり でした
- 5. するつもり だ と言っています

- 6. 来るつもり だ と言っています
- 7. 引っ越すつもり だ と言っていました
- 8. 書くつもり です

Chapter 41:

<u>T-form</u>	<u>~てもいい</u>
1. 払って	払ってもいい
2. 死んで	死んでもいい
3. 覚えて	覚えてもいい
4. 着て	着てもいい
5. 泳いで	泳いでもいい
ない-form	<u>~なくてもいい</u>
<u>ない-form</u> 1. 払わない	<u>~なくてもいい</u> 払わなくてもいい
1. 払わない	払わなくてもいい
 払わない 死なない 	払わなくてもいい死ななくてもいい

- 1. 彼女 は 英語 を 勉強 しなくてもいい です か
- 2. 電話 を 借りても いい です か
- 3. コンサート に 行かなくてもいい です か
- 4. あなたの ペン を 使ってもいい です か
- 5. ランチ を 食べてもいい です か
- 6. 彼はドアを閉めてもいいですか

7. 彼女 は 牛乳 を 買わなくてもいい です か

Chapter 42:

Practice problems:

- 1. まで
- 2. までに
- 3. までに
- 4. まで
- 5. まで
- 6. まで
- 7. までに
- 8. まで

Chapter 43:

<u>Volitional-form</u> ~と 思う

- 1. 書こう 書こう と思う
- 2. 考えよう 考えよう と思う
- 3. 泳ごう 泳ごう と思う
- 4. 聞こう 聞こう と思う
- 5. 見ょう 見ょう と思う

- 1. 私 は コーヒー を 飲もう と思う/思います
- 2. 私 は パソコン を 買おう と思わない/思いません
- 3. 彼女 は すし を 食べょう と思っている/思っています

- 4. 私 は 音楽 を 聞こう と思う/思います
- 5. 彼 は 音楽 を 聞こう と思っている/思っています
- 6. 私 は お茶 を 飲もう と思う/思います
- 7. お母さん は 晩御飯 を 作ろう と思っています/思っている
- 8. お父さん は 晩御飯 を 作ろう と思っていない/思っていません
- 9. 私 は テレビ を 見よう と思わない/思っていません

Chapter 44:

- 1. が / けど
- 2. が / けど
- 3. だが / だけど
- 4. が / けど
- 5. だが / だけど
- 6. が / けど
- 7. が / けど
- 8. が / けど
- 9. だが / だけど
- 10.が/けど
- 11. が / けど
- 12.が/けど
- 13. が / けど
- 14. だが / だけど
- 15. が / けど

Chapter 45:

<u>ます-stem</u> <u>~すぎる</u>

1. 歩きます 歩きすぎる

2. 買います 買いすぎる

3. 泳ぎます 泳ぎすぎる

4. 切ります 切りすぎる

5. 入れます 入れすぎる

43-adjectives:

1. 暑すぎる

2. 安すぎる

3. 苦すぎる

4. 甘すぎる

5. 冷たすぎる

な-adjectives:

1. 変すぎる

2. 静かすぎる

3. にぎやかすぎる

4. 大事すぎる

Practice problems:

1. 私 は ジュース を 飲みすぎました

2. 東京 は にぎやかすぎる

- 3. メキシコ 料理 は 辛すぎる
- 4. アリゾナ は 暑すぎる
- 5. それ は 高すぎれば / 高すぎたら 買いません
- 6. あなた の アイデア は 変すぎる
- 7. それ は 高すぎなければ / 高すぎなかったら 買います
- 8. 仕事 が 暇すぎれば / 暇すぎたら 帰ります
- 9. 私 は テレビ を 見すぎました

Chapter 46:

- 1. 本は テーブルの下に あります
- 2. 猫はベッドの上にいます
- 3. 猫 は ベッド の 左 に います
- 4. 猫 は ベッド の 前 に います
- 5. 猫 は ボール の 左 に います
- 6. ボール は 猫 の 右 に あります
- 7. 猫は テーブルの上にいます
- 8. 猫 は テーブル の うしろ にいます
- 9. 猫 は ボール の 前 に います
- 10. ボール は テーブル の 下 に あります
- 11. ボール は 猫 の うしろ に あります

Chapter 47:

より:

- 1. 青い シャツ は 赤い シャツ より 安い です
- 2. 彼 は 彼女 より 背 が 高い です
- 3. 赤い ボール は 緑色 の ボール より 大きい です
- 4. 青い ビル は ねずみ色 の ビル より 低い です
- 5. けいたい電話 は こてい電話 より べんり です
- 6. 彼女 は 彼 より 背 が ひくい です
- 7. 緑色 の ボール は 赤い ボール より 小きい です

<u>ほど:</u>

- 1. 青い シャツ は 赤い シャツ ほど 高くない です
- 2. 彼 は 彼女 ほど 背が 低くない です
- 3. 赤い ボール は 緑色 の ボール ほど 小さくない です
- 4. 青い ビル は ねずみ色 の ビル ほど 高くない です
- 5. こうてい電話 は けいたい電話 ほど 便利 ではない です
- 6. 彼女 は 彼 ほど 背 が 高くない です
- 7. 赤い ボール は 緑色 の ボール ほど 小さくない です

- 1.
- 青いペンは赤いペンより(も)長いです
- 赤いペンは青いペンほど長くないです
- 赤いペンょり(も)青いペンの方が長いです
- 2.
- レモン は りんご より(も) すっぱい です

- りんご は レモン ほど すっぱくない です
- りんご より(も)レモン の 方 が すっぱい です

3.

- アメリカ は 日本 より(も) 広い です
- 日本 は アメリカ ほど 広くない です
- 日本 より(も)アメリカ の 方 が 広い です

4.

- コーヒー は オレンジジュース より(も) 苦い です
- オレンジジュース は コーヒー ほど 苦くない です
- オレンジジュース より(も)コーヒー の 方 が 苦い です

Chapter 48:

T-form~てみる1. 行って行ってみる2. 見て見てみる3. 飛んで飛んでみる

5. 覚えて 覚えてみる

考えてみる

Practice problems:

1. 聞いてみて

4. 考えて

- 2. 行ってみたい
- 3. 食べてみた
- 4. 歌ってみます
- 5. してみて
- 6. 作ってみよう

7. 飲んでみたい

Chapter 49:

43-adjectives:

<u>~そう</u>

- 1. 優しそう
- 2. 暑そう
- 3. 甘そう
- 4. 苦そう
- 5. 近そう

Verbs:

<u>ます-form</u> <u>~そう</u>

- 1. 行けます 行けそう
- 2. 書けます 書けそう
- 3. 食べます 食べそう
- 4. 考えます 考えそう
- 5. 祈ります 祈りそう
- 6. 喜びます 喜びそう
- 7. 読みます 詠みそう

<u>~なさそう:</u>

<u>ない-form</u> <u>~なさそう</u>

- 1. 優しくない 優しくなさそう
- 2. 暑くない 暑くなさそう
- 3. 痛くない 痛くなさそう

- 4. 軽くない 軽くなさそう
- 5. 暗くない 暗くなさそう

- 1. 美味しくなさそう
- 2. 優しくなさそう
- 3. 眠くなさそう
- 4. 面白くなさそう
- 5. 難しくなさそう

な-adjectives:

<u>ない-form</u> <u>~なさそう</u>

- 1. 大変ではない 大変ではなさそう
- 2. きれいではない きれいではなさそう
- 3. 静かではない 静かではなさそう
- 4. 元気ではない 元気ではなさそう
- 5. 便利ではない 便利ではなさそう

Verbs:

<u>ます-form</u> <u>~そう も ない</u>

- 1. 食べます 食べそうもない
- 2. 出来ます 出来そうもない
- 3. 読みます 読みそうもない
- 4. 答えます 答えそうもない
- 5. 買います 買いそうもない
- 6. 走ります 走りそうもない

- 1. それ は 楽し そう です
- 2. 彼 は 悲しそう です
- 3. これ は 辛くなさそう です
- 4. ラグビー は 痛そう です
- 5. ゴルフ は 痛くなさそう です
- 6. この 椅子 は 丈夫そう です
- 7. それ は 大変そう です
- 8. 雪 が 降りそう です
- 9. 雪 が 降りそうもない です
- 10. 赤ちゃん は 泣きそう です
- 11. 東京は静かではなさそう です
- 12. それ は 楽しくなさそう です
- 13. 日本語 は 簡単そう です
- 14. 英語 は 簡単ではなさそう です

Chapter 50:

	<u>ます-form</u>	<u>~ながら</u>
1.	来ます	来ながら
2.	乗ります	乗りながら
3.	泣きます	泣きながら
4.	歌います	歌いながら
5.	飲みます	飲みながら

6. 教えます 教えながら

7. 笑います 笑いながら

8. 寝ます 寝ながら

Practice Problems:

1. 食べながら, 読んでいます

2. しながら, 聞きます

3. 見ながら, しました

4. 走りながら、考えました

5. 飲みながら, 読みました

6. 聞きながら, 描きました

Chapter 51:

	<u>ます-form</u>	<u>~にくい</u>	<u>~やすい</u>
1.	飲みます	飲みにくい	飲みやすい
2.	使います	使いにくい	使いやすい
3.	作ります	作りにくい	作りやすい
4.	投げます	投げにくい	投げやすい
5.	します	しにくい	しやすい
6.	考えます	考えにくい	考えやすい

- 1. 漢字 は 覚えやすい です / 漢字 は 覚えにくい です
- 2. ひらがな は 書きやすい です / ひらがな は 書きにくい です
- 3. カタカナ は 読みやすい です / カタカナ は 読みにくい です
- 4. スマホ は 使いやすい です / スマフォ は 使いにくい です

5. すし は 作りやすい です / すし は 作りにくい です

Chapter 52:

Practice Problems:

- 1. 出来る かどうか
- 2. 辛い かどうか
- 3. 簡単 かどうか
- 4. 便利 かどうか
- 5. 来る かどうか
- 6. 帰った かどうか
- 7. 食べられる かどうか
- 8. 寒い かどうか
- 9. 静か かどうか

Chapter 53:

<u>~だす</u>	<u>~はじめる</u>
1. 降りだす	降りはじめる
2. 鳴りだす	鳴りはじめる
3. 投げだす	投げはじめる
4. 歩きだす	歩きはじめる
5. 泳ぎだす	泳ぎはじめる

- 1. 降りはじめたら / 降りだしたら
- 2. 見はじめました / 見だしました

- 3. 聞きはじめました / 聞きだしました
- 4. 作りはじめます / 作りだします
- 5. 泣きはじめました / 泣きだしました
- 6. 降りはじめませんでした / 降りだしませんでした

つづける:

<u>ます-form</u>	<u>~つづける</u>
1. 降ります	降りつづける
2. 弾きます	弾きつづける
3. 鳴ります	鳴りつづける
4. 投げます	投げつづける
5. 歩きます	歩きつづける
6. 泳ぎます	泳ぎつづける

Practice problems:

- 1. 飲みつづけます
- 2. 話しつづけました
- 3. 見つづけます
- 4. 吸いつづけます
- 5. 働きつづけます
- 6. 働きつづけません

<u>~おわる:</u>

	<u>ます-form</u>	<u>~おわる</u>
1.	降ります	降りおわる
2.	弾きます	弾きおわる

- 3. 鳴ります 鳴りおわる
- 4. 投げます 投げおわる
- 5. 歩きます 歩きおわる
- 6. 泳ぎます 泳ぎおわる

- 1. 読みおわりません でした
- 2. 食べおわったら
- 3. しおわります
- 4. 書きおわる
- 5. しおわったら

Chapter 54:

Dictionary form +こと に する ない-form + こと に する

- 1. 来る こと に する 来ない こと に する
- 2. 帰る こと に する 帰らない こと に する
- 3. 行くことにする 行かないことにする
- 4. 出る こと に する 出ない こと に する
- 5. 書くことにする 書かない こと にする
- 6. 辞める こと に する 辞めない こと に する
- 7. 飛ぶ こと に する 飛ばないことにする
- 8. 買う こと に する 買わない こと に する
- 9. 死ぬ こと に する 死なない こと に する
- 10. 押す こと に する 押さない こと に する

- 1. 私 は テレビ を 見る こと に しました
- 2. 彼 は この CD を 買わない こと に しました
- 3. 私 は アメリカ に 行く こと に しました
- 4. 私 は 帰る こと に した
- 5. 雨 が 降っている から 行かない こと に した
- 6. これ は 安かった ので 買う こと に した
- 7. 彼女 は 来ない こと に しました

Chapter 55:

- 1. 何でも
- 2. どこでも
- 3. 何でも
- 4. 何でも
- 5. 誰でも
- 6. いつでも
- 7. どうでも
- 8. いつでも
- 9. どこでも
- 10. 誰でも

Chapter 56:

	て-form	<u>~て は いけない</u>
1.	来で	来て は いけない
2.	して	して は いけない
3.	覚えて	覚えて は いけない
4.	打って	打って は いけない
5.	寝て	寝て は いけない

6. 行って 行って は いけない

Chapter 57:

	ない-form	<u>~なくては いけない</u>	<u>~なければ ならない</u>
1.	飲まない	飲まなくて は いけない	飲まなければ ならない
2.	走らない	走らなくて は いけない	走らなければ ならない
3.	投げない	投げなくて は いけない	投げなければ ならない
4.	打たない	打たなくて は いけない	打たなければ ならない
5.	寝ない	寝なくて は いけない	寝なければ ならない
6.	行かない	行なくて は いけない	行かなければ ならない

- 1. 吸って は いけない
- 2. 歩かなければ ならない /歩かなくて は いけない
- 3. しなければ ならない /しなくて は いけない
- 4. してはいけない
- 5. あげなければ ならない / あげなくて は いけない
- 6. 行かなければ ならない /行かなくて は いけない

- 7. 買わなければ ならなかった / 買わなくて は いけなかった
- 8. 支払わなければ ならない / 支払わなくて は いけない
- 9. 話して は いけない
- 10. 着なければ ならない / 着なくて は いけない
- 11. 失くして は いけない
- 12. 考えて は いけない

Chapter 58:

Type I verbs:

- 1. 叱られる
- 2. 開かれる
- 3. 切られる
- 4. 使われる
- 5. こぼされる

Type II verbs:

- 1. あげられる
- 2. 閉められる
- 3. 着られる
- 4. 逃げられる

- 1. は、に、持って来られました
- 2. は、に、を、盗まれました
- 3. は、を、食べました
- 4. は、に、食べられました

- 5. は、に、言われました
- 6. は、を、作りました
- 7. は、を、書きました
- 8. は、に、書かれました
- 9. は、に、を、飲まれました